

The North American Third Edition

Cambridge Latin Course



Unit 2

THIS BOOK IS THE PROPERTY OF:

STATE _____
PROVINCE _____
COUNTY _____
PARISH _____
SCHOOL DISTRICT _____
OTHER _____

Book No. _____
Enter information
in spaces
to the left as
instructed

ISSUED TO	Year Used	CONDITION	
		ISSUED	RETURNED
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			
Nicholas Thomson			

PUPILS to whom this textbook is issued must not write on any page or mark any part of it in any way, consumable textbooks excepted.

- 1. Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every book issued.
- 2. The following terms should be used in recording the condition of the book: New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2013

The North American Third Edition

Cambridge Latin Course

Unit 2

Revision Editor

Ed Phinney

*Chair, Department of Classics, & Director, University Foreign Language Resource Center
University of Massachusetts at Amherst, U.S.A.*

Consulting Editor

Patricia E. Bell

*Teacher of Latin & Assistant Head of Languages
Centennial Collegiate and Vocational Institute, Guelph, Ontario, Canada*

Editorial Assistant

Barbara Romaine

Amherst, Massachusetts, U.S.A.



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Published by the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA

The Cambridge Latin Course was funded and developed by the University of Cambridge School Classics Project and SCDC Publications, London, and is published with the sponsorship of the School Curriculum Development Committee in London and the North American Cambridge Classics Project.

© SCDC Publications 1971, 1982, 1983, 1988

This edition first published 1988

Reprinted 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000

Printed in the United States of America

Library of Congress cataloguing in publication data

Cambridge Latin Course. Unit 2.

Includes index.

1. Latin language – Grammar –

ISBN 0-521-34381-X hardback

Stories from Unit 2 which have been recorded on the cassette tapes accompanying the course are so indicated by the cassette symbol .

Drawings by Peter Kesteven, Joy Mellor and Leslie Jones

Maps and diagrams by Reg Piggott and Jeff Edwards

Acknowledgments

Thanks are due to the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Front cover, pp 56, 65 below, 73 Fishbourne Roman Palace/Sussex Archaeological Trust; pp iv, 25 Landesmuseum, Trier; p 5 by courtesy of the Yorkshire museum; p 6 Faculty of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge; p 9 courtesy of the Verulamium Museum, St Albans; p 12 Stephen Hall, Cambridge; pp 13, 32, 36, 37, 101 above, 108, 133, 149, 153 the Trustees of the British Museum; p 16 Cambridge University Collection, copyright reserved; p 20 Corinium Museum, Cirencester; p 24 Royal Scottish Museum, Edinburgh; pp 41, 60 Colchester and Essex Museum; pp 53, 81, 128-29, 136 above, 144 © Scala, Firenze; p 57 Acrofilms; p 65 above Robert Woodward, creator (with John Woodward) of this copy of the Woodchester mosaic; p 67 Bernisches Historisches Museum; p 68 Ronald Sheridan's Photo-Library; p 76 Sharon Pallent; p 80 Alinari; p 85 above Museum of London; pp 85 below, 92, 101 below Al Ahrām, Cairo; p 93 above Barbara Romaine; p 93 below BBC Hulton Picture Library; p 100 The Corning Museum of Glass; p 105 Musées Départementaux de la Seine-Maritime, Rouen; p 113 Corning Glass Center; p 116 Ed Phinney; pp 125, 135, 141, 142 The Mansell Collection; p 136 below The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Gift of Edward S. Harkness, 1917; p 156 from Cosmos.

Cover picture: the central roundel of a second century floor mosaic in the palace at Fishbourne showing a winged cupid riding a dolphin.

Contents

Unit 2

Stage 13	in Britannia	page 1
Stage 14	apud Salvium	21
Stage 15	rēx Cogidubnus	43
Stage 16	in aulā	61
Stage 17	Alexandriā	77
Stage 18	Eutychus et Clēmēns	97
Stage 19	Īsis	119
Stage 20	medicus	139

Language Information Section 161

PART ONE: Review Grammar 162

Nouns (puella, servus, mercātor, leō, *etc.*) 162

Adjectives (bonus, fortis) 167

Comparison of Adjectives
(i.e. comparative and superlative forms) 169

Pronouns (ego, tū, nōs, vōs, hic, ille, *etc.*) 172

Regular Verbs (portō, doceō, trahō, capiō, audiō) 178

Irregular Verbs (sum, possum, volō, eō, ferō) 182

Word Order 184

Longer Sentences I
(with “postquam,” “simulac,” *etc.*) 186

Longer Sentences II (with verbs understood) 189

PART TWO: Reference Grammar 190

PART THREE: Complete Vocabulary 198

Guide to Characters and Places 214

Index of Cultural Topics 217

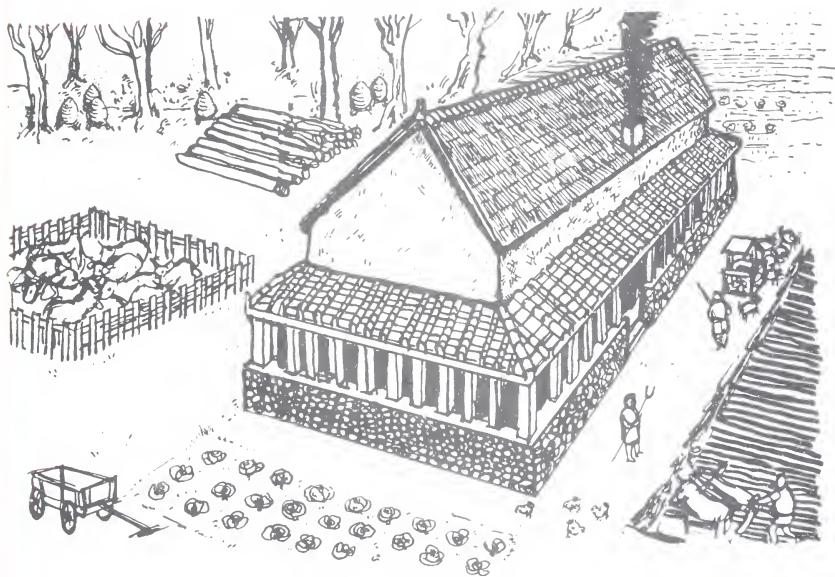
Index of Grammatical Topics 218

Time Chart giving key dates for events relating to Britain, Egypt, and Rome 220

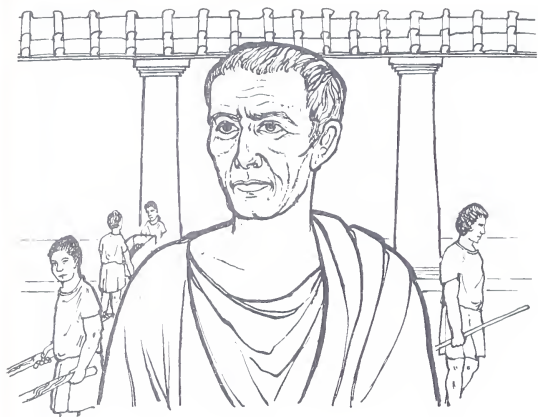


Wall painting from eastern Gaul showing workers outside a villa.

Stage 13



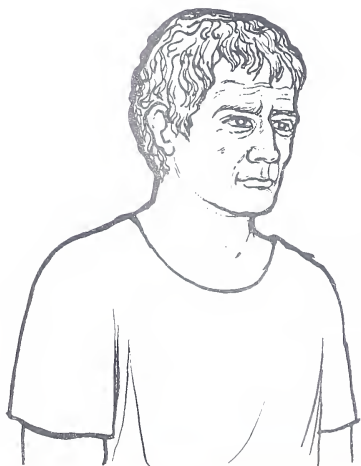
in Britannia



hic vir est Gāius Salvius
Līberālis.
Salvius in vīllā
magnificā habitat.
vīlla est in Britannīā.
Salvius multōs servōs
habet.



uxor est Rūfilla.
Rūfilla multās ancillās
habet.
ancillae in vīllā
labōrant.



hic servus est Vārica.
Vārica est vīlicus.
vīllam et servōs cūrat.



hic servus est Philus.
Philus callidus est.
Philus numerāre potest.



hic servus est Volūbilis.
Volūbilis coquus
optimus est.
Volūbilis cēnam
optimam coquere potest.



hic servus est Bregāns.
Bregāns nōn callidus
est. Bregāns numerāre
nōn potest.
Bregāns fessus est.
Bregāns dormīre vult.



hic servus est Loquāx.
Loquāx vōcem suāvem
habet.
Loquāx suāviter cantāre
potest.



hic servus est Anti-
Loquāx.
Anti-Loquāx agilis est.
Anti-Loquāx optimē
saltāre potest.
Loquāx et Anti-Loquāx
sunt geminī.



Salvius multōs servōs
habet. servī labōrant.
servī ignāvī et fessī sunt.
servī labōrāre nōlunt.

trēs servī in villā labōrant. haec villa est in Britannia. servī dīlīgenter labōrant, quod dominum exspectant. servī vītā suā dēplōrant.

Philus: (*pecūniam numerat.*) iterum pluit! semper pluit! nōs sōlem numquam vidēmus. ego ad Ītaliā redīre volō. ego sōlem vidēre volō.

5

Volūbilis: (*cēnam in culīnā parat.*) ubi est vīnum? nūllum vīnum vidēō. quis hausit? ego aquam bibere nōn possum! aqua est foeda!

Bregāns: (*pavīmentum lavat.*) ego labōrāre nōlō! fessus sum. multum vīnum bibī. ego dormīre volō.

10

(*Vārica subitō villā intrat. Vārica est vīlicus.*)

Vārica: servī! dominus noster īrātus advenit! apud Cantiacōs servī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. dominus est vulnerātus.

Bregāns: nōs dē hāc coniūrātiōne audīre volumus. rem nārrā!

dēplōrant: dēplōrāre	<i>complain about</i>
pluit	<i>it is raining</i>
sōlem: sōl	<i>sun</i>
redīre volō	<i>I want to return</i>
aquam: aqua	<i>water</i>
bibere nōn possum	<i>I cannot drink</i>
foeda	<i>foul, horrible</i>
pavīmentum	<i>floor</i>

lavat: lavāre	<i>wash</i>
labōrāre nōlō	<i>I do not want to work</i>
fessus	<i>tired</i>
advenit: advenīre	<i>arrive</i>
apud Cantiacōs	<i>among the Cantiaci</i>
coniūrātiōnem:	
coniūrātiō	<i>plot</i>
vulnerātus	<i>wounded</i>

Britanniā: Britannia *Britain*

Ītaliā: Ītalia *Italy*

Cantiacōs: Cantiacī *the name of a tribe in southeastern Britain*



Reconstruction of a Roman plow.

coniūratiō

Vārica rem nārrāvit:

“nōs apud Cantiacōs erāmus, quod Salvius metallum novum
vīsītābat. hospes erat Pompēius Optātus, vir benignus. in metallō
labōrābant multī servī. quamquam servī multum ferrum ē terrā
effodiēbant, Salvius nōn erat contentus. Salvius servōs ad sē vocāvit 5
et īspexit. ūnus servus aeger erat. Salvius servum aegrum ē turbā
trāxit et clāmāvit,

‘servus aeger est inūtilis. ego servōs inūtilēs retinēre nōlō.’



Slave chain which would have been attached to the necks of a line of slaves.

postquam hoc dixit, Salvius carnificibus servum trādidit. carnificēs
eum statim interfēcērunt.

10

hic servus tamen fīlium habēbat: nōmen erat Alātor. Alātor
patrem suum vindicāre voluit. itaque, ubi cēterī dormiēbant, Alātor
pugionem cēpit. postquam custōdēs ēlūsit, cubiculum intrāvit. in
hōc cubiculō Salvius dormiēbat. tum Alātor dominum nostrum
petīvit et vulnerāvit. dominus noster erat perterritus: manūs ad
servum extendit et veniam petīvit. custōdēs tamen sonōs
audīvērunt. in cubiculum ruērunt et Alātōrem interfēcērunt. tum
Salvius saeviēbat. statim Pompēium excitāvit et irātus clāmāvit.

15

‘servus mē vulnerāvit! coniūratiō est! omnēs servī sunt cōnsciī.
ego omnibus supplicium poscō!’

20

Pompēius. postquam hoc audīvit, erat attonitus.

‘ego omnēs servōs interficere nōn possum. ūnus tē vulnerāvit.
ūnus igitur est nocēns, cēterī innocentēs.’

‘custōdēs nōn sunt innocentēs,’ inquit Salvius. ‘cum Alātōre
coniūrābant.’

25

Pompēius invītus cōnsēnsit et carnificibus omnēs custōdēs
trādidit.”

metallum	<i>a mine</i>
hospes	<i>host</i>
quamquam	<i>although</i>
ferrum	<i>iron</i>
effodiēbant: effodere	<i>dig</i>
inūtilis	<i>useless</i>
carnificibus: carnifex	<i>executioner</i>
nōmen	<i>name</i>
vindicāre voluit	<i>wanted to avenge</i>
itaque	<i>and so</i>
ubi	<i>when</i>
cēterī	<i>the others</i>
pugionem: pugiō	<i>dagger</i>
custōdēs: custōs	<i>guard</i>
ēlūsit: ēlūdere	<i>slip past</i>
manūs extendit	<i>stretched out his hands</i>
veniam petīvit	<i>begged for mercy</i>
saeviēbat: saevire	<i>be in a rage</i>
cōnsciī: cōnscius	<i>accomplice</i>
supplicium	<i>death penalty</i>
poscō: poscere	<i>demand</i>
nocēns	<i>guilty</i>
innocentēs: innocēns	<i>innocent</i>
coniūrābant: coniūrare	<i>plot</i>
invītus	<i>unwilling, reluctant</i>

Bregāns

tum Vārica, postquam hanc rem nārrāvit, clāmāvit,

“Loquāx! Anti-Loquāx! dominus advenit. vocāte servōs in āream! ego eōs īnspicere volō.”

servī ad āream celeriter cucurrērunt, quod Salvium timēbant. servī in ordinēs longōs sē īnstrūxērunt. vīlicus per ordinēs ambulābat; servōs īnspiciēbat et numerābat. subitō exclāmāvit, 5

“ubi sunt ancillae? nūllās ancillās videō.”

“ancillae dominō nostrō cubiculum parant,” respondit Loquāx.

“ubi est Volūbilis noster?” inquit Vārica. “ego Volūbilem vidēre nōn possum.” 10

“Volūbilis venīre nōn potest, quod cēnam parat,” respondit Anti-Loquāx.

Bregāns in mediīs servīs stābat; canem ingentem sēcum habēbat.

“rēx Cogidubnus dominō nostrō hunc canem mīsīt,” inquit Bregāns. “canis ferōcissimus est; bēstiās optimē agitāre potest.” 15

subitō vīgintī equitēs āream intrāvērunt. prīmus erat Salvius. postquam ex equō dēscendit, Vāricam salūtāvit.

“servōs īnspicere volō,” inquit Salvius. tum Salvius et Vārica per ordinēs ambulābant.

puerī puellaeque in prīmō ordine stābant et dominum suum salūtābant. cum puerīs stābant geminī. 20

“salvē, domine!” inquit Loquāx.

“salvē, domine!” inquit Anti-Loquāx.

Bregāns, simulac Salvium vīdit, “domine! domine!” clāmāvit.

Salvius servō nihil respondit. Bregāns iterum clāmāvit, 25

“Salvī! Salvī! spectā canem!”

Salvius saeviēbat, quod servus erat īnsolēns.

“servus īnsolentissimus es,” inquit Salvius. Bregantem ferōciter pulsāvit. Bregāns ad terram dēcidit. canis statim ex ordine ērūpit, et Salvium petīvit. nōnnūllī servī ex ordinibus ērūpērunt et canem retrāxērunt. Salvius, postquam sē recēpit, gladium dēstrīnxit. 30

“istum canem interficere volō,” inquit Salvius.

“hoc difficile est,” inquit Bregāns. “rēx Cogidubnus, amīcus tuus, tibi canem dedit.”

“ita vērō, difficile est,” respondit Salvius. “sed ego tē pūnīre 35
possum. hoc facile est, quod servus meus es.”

in āream	into the courtyard	geminī	twins
in ōdinēs	in rows	simulac	as soon as
sē īnstrūxērunt:		īsolēns	rude, insolent
sē īnstruere	draw oneself up	ērūpit: ērumpere	break away
sēcum	with him	nōnnūllī	some, several
rēx	king	retrāxērunt: retrahere	drag back
equitēs: eques	horseman	sē recēpit: sē recipere	recover
equō: equus	horse	pūnīre	punish
puerī puellaeque	the boys and girls	facile	easy

Cogidubnus *British ally of the Romans,
appointed king under
Emperor Claudius*



**British vase showing a hunting
dog chasing a hare.**



- 1 Who inspected the slaves before Salvius arrived?
- 2 Why were the slave-girls missing from the inspection?
- 3 What gift had been sent for Salvius? Who had sent it?
- 4 Why did Bregans want to attract Salvius' attention?
- 5 Why did Salvius draw his sword?
- 6 What impression of Bregans do you get from this story?

About the Language

1 Study the following pairs of sentences:

Bregāns dormit.
Bregans is sleeping.

Bregāns **dormīre** vult.
Bregans wants to sleep.

iuvenēs vīnum bibunt.
The young men are drinking wine.

iuvenēs vīnum **bibere** volunt.
The young men want to drink wine.

servī currunt.
The slaves are running.

servī celeriter **currere** possunt.
The slaves are able to run quickly.

coquus cēnam parat.
The cook is preparing dinner.

coquus cēnam optimam **parāre** potest.
The cook is able to prepare a very good dinner.

The form of the verb in boldface is known as the *infinitive*.

2 Further examples:

1 Anti-Loquāx currit. Anti-Loquāx currere potest.

2 Bregāns labōrat. Bregāns labōrāre nōn vult.

3 geminī fābulam audīre volunt.

4 puerī festīnāre nōn possunt.

3 The verbs **volō** and **possum** are often used with an infinitive. They form their present tense as follows:

(ego) volō	<i>I want</i>	(ego) possum	<i>I am able</i>
(tū) vīs	<i>you (singular) want</i>	(tū) potes	<i>you (singular) are able</i>
vult	<i>s/he wants</i>	potest	<i>s/he is able</i>
(nōs) volumus	<i>we want</i>	(nōs) possumus	<i>we are able</i>
(vōs) vultis	<i>you (plural) want</i>	(vōs) potestis	<i>you (plural) are able</i>
volunt	<i>they want</i>	possunt	<i>they are able</i>

ego sōlem vidēre volō.

I want to see the sun.

tū pugnāre nōn potes.

You are not able to fight.

4 **possum**, **potes**, etc. can also be translated as *I can*, *you can*, etc.:

nōs dormīre nōn possumus.

We cannot sleep.

ego leōnem interficere possum.

I can kill the lion.

5 Further examples:

- 1 ego pugnāre possum.
- 2 nōs effugere nōn possumus.
- 3 nōs vīnum bibere volumus.
- 4 tū labōrāre nōn vīs.
- 5 vōs celerīter currere potestis.

Salvius fundum īnspicit

postrīdiē Salvius fundum īnspicere voluīt. Vārica īgitur eum per fundum dūxit, vīlicus dominō agrōs et segetem ostendit.

“seges est optima, domine,” inquit Vārica. “servī multum frūmentum in horreum iam intulērunt.”

Salvius, postquam agrōs circumspectāvit, Vāricae dīxit.

“ubi sunt arātōrēs et magister? nōne Cervīx arātōribus praeest?”

“ita vērō, domine!” respondit Vārica. “sed arātōrēs hodiē nōn labōrant, quod Cervīx abest, aeger est.”

Salvius eī respondit, “quid dīxistī? aeger est? ego servum aegrum retinēre nōlō.”

“sed Cervīx perītissimus est,” exclāmāvit vīlicus. “Cervīx sōlus rem rūsticā cūrāre potest.”

“tacē!” inquit Salvius. “eum vēndere volō.”

simulatque hoc dīxit, duōs servōs vīdit, servī ad horreum festīnābant.

“quid faciunt hī servī?” rogāvit Salvius.

“hī servī arātōribus cibum ferunt, domine, placetne tibi?” respondit Vārica.

agrōs: ager	field	praeest: praesse	be in charge of
segetem: seges	crop, harvest	eī	to him
frūmentum	grain	perītissimus: peritus	skillful
horreum	barn, granary	sōlus	alone, only
intulērunt: infēre	bring in	rem rūsticā	the farming
arātōrēs: arātor	plowman	cūrāre	look after, superintend
magister	foreman	simulatque	as soon as
nōne	surely	ferunt: ferre	bring

“mihi nōn placet!” inquit Salvius. “ego servīs ignāvīs nūllum 20
cibum dō.”

tum dominus et vīlicus ad horreum advēnērunt. prope horreum
Salvius aedificium vīdit. aedificium erat sēmirutum.

“quid est hoc aedificium?” inquit Salvius.

“horreum novum est, domine!” respondit vīlicus. “alterum 25
horreum iam plēnum est. ego igitur novum aedificāre volūi.”

“sed cūr sēmirutum est?” inquit Salvius.

Vārica respondit, “ubi servī horreum aedificābant, domine, rēs
dīra accidit. taurus, animal ferōx, impetum in hoc aedificium fēcit.
mūrōs dēlēvit et servōs terruit.” 30

“quis taurum dūcēbat?” inquit Salvius. “quis erat negligēns?”

“Bregāns!”

“ēheu!” inquit Salvius. “ego Britannīs nōn crēdō. omnēs Britannī
sunt stultī, sed iste Bregāns est stultior quam cēterī!”

ignāvīs: ignāvus *lazy*
aedificium *building*
dīra *dreadful, awful*

taurus *bull*
neglegēns *careless*

Britannīs: Britannī *Britons*



Soay sheep, a breed that has changed very little since the earliest domestication of sheep. The Romans would have found them being farmed in Britain when they arrived there.



Bronze statuette of
a plowman with a team
of oxen, from Roman Britain.

About the Language

1 In this Stage, you have met a new way of saying *and* in Latin:

puerī puellae que	<i>boys and girls</i>
dominus servī que	<i>master and slaves</i>

Further examples:

- 1 servī ancillae**que**
- 2 agricolae mercātōrēs**que**

2 The next examples are slightly longer:

dominus ex equō dēscendit, villam**que** intrāvit.
The master got off his horse and went into the house.

Salvius milītēs centuriōnem**que** salūtāvit.
Salvius greeted the soldiers and the centurion.

Further examples:

- 1 Vārica servōs ancillās**que** īnspect.
- 2 Volūbilis ad culinam revēnit, cibum**que** parāvit.

Practicing the Language

- 1 Complete each sentence of this exercise with the most suitable word from the list below and then translate.

effugere, numerāre, dormīre, bibere, īnspicere, portāre

- 1 Volūbilis nōn est laetus. aquam in culīnā bibit. vīnum vult.
- 2 Bregāns est rōbustus. amphoram ad culīnam portat.
Bregāns trēs amphorās potest.
- 3 Philus est callidus. pecūniam in tablīnō numerat.
Philus pecūniam celerrimē potest.
- 4 Salvius est dominus. Salvius servōs diligenter īnspicit.
Salvius fundum quoque vult.
- 5 Loquāx et Anti-Loquāx sunt fessī. puerī in culīnā dormiunt.
puerī saepe volunt.
- 6 servī contentī nōn sunt. servī ā vīlicō effugiunt.
servī ē villā volunt.

rōbustus

strong

celerrimē *very quickly*

amphoram: amphora

wine-jar

ā vīlicō *from the manager*

- 2 Complete each sentence of this exercise with the most suitable word from the lists below, and then translate. Do not use any word more than once.

cōspexī	vituperāvī	obdormīvī	fūgī	verberāvī
cōspexistī	vituperāvistī	obdormīvistī	fūgistī	verberāvistī
cōspexit	vituperāvit	obdormīvit	fūgit	verberāvit

- 1 servus in cubiculō labōrābat. servus, quod erat fessus, in cubiculō
- 2 Salvius, postquam cubiculum intrāvit, servum; statim fūstem cēpit et servum
- 3 Rūfilla Salviō clāmāvit, “tū es dominus dūrus! cūr tū servum?”
- 4 “ego servum, quod in cubiculō dormiēbat,” respondit Salvius.
- 5 “heri,” inquit Rūfilla, “tū ancillam meam, quod neglegēter erat. ancilla perterrita erat, et ē villā”
- 6 “in villā meā ego sum dominus,” inquit Salvius. “ego ancillam, quod ignāva erat.”

dūrus *harsh, hard*

Salvius

Gaius Salvius Liberalis was born in central Italy but, like many bright and ambitious young men, he soon moved to Rome, where he gained a reputation for speaking his mind. After becoming a successful lawyer, he was made a Roman senator, probably by the Emperor Vespasian. In A.D.78 he was chosen to be one of the Arval Brotherhood – a group of twelve distinguished men who met to perform religious ceremonies and in particular to pray for the emperor and his family. Salvius was also put in command of a legion; this was not only a great honor but could lead to further honors in the future. Not long afterwards, in about A.D.81, he was sent probably by the Emperor Domitian to help Agricola, the Roman governor of the province of Britain.

Salvius' main task was probably to supervise the law courts and look after the southern part of the province while Agricola was away fighting in the north. He would have traveled around the country acting as a judge; he may also have arranged for some of the money raised by farming and mining in Britain to be sent regularly to the emperor in Rome. The stories in Stages 13 and 14 imagine Salvius and his wife Rufilla living in an impressive villa not far from Noviomagus (Chichester) near the Sussex coast in southern Britain.

Our knowledge of Salvius comes mainly from the details on a gravestone discovered in central Italy and an inscription found in some woods near Rome. He is also mentioned by two Roman writers, Pliny and Suetonius. Another gravestone has been found dedicated to “Vitellia Rufilla, wife of Gaius Salvius Liberalis, priestess of the welfare of the emperor, best of mothers.” It was set up by their son.

Farming in Roman Britain

The Villa

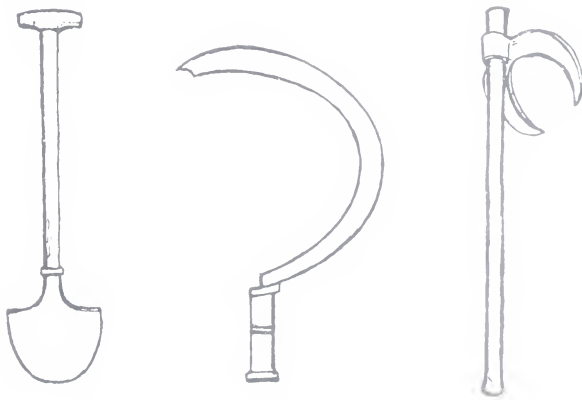
Most inhabitants of Roman Britain lived in the countryside. The native Britons were mainly peasants, living simply in round huts and farming small plots. But some Britons and a few Romans lived in villas and between six and seven hundred of these have been discovered by archaeologists.



Aerial view of the remains of a Roman villa in Britain. Some aerial photographs also show outlines of cultivated fields from Roman times.

Villas were well-built country houses with land for farming. The earliest villas had only three or four rooms, sometimes linked by a corridor; they were built mainly of timber and wattle-and-daub, with roofs of stone slabs, tiles, or thatch. Later villas were often more complicated in design and were built mostly of stone; the grandest ones might contain long colonnades, flushing latrines, glass windows, under-floor heating, mosaics, and a set of baths complete with **tepidārium** and **caldārium**. They also had workshops, barns, living-quarters for the farm laborers, and sheds for the animals. In choosing a place to build his villa, the owner would look not only for attractive surroundings but also for practical advantages, such as a nearby supply of running water and shelter from the cold north and east winds.

The main crops grown in Britain at this time were barley, oats, rye, and especially wheat. Archaeologists have found traces of all these crops, accidentally scorched or charred, and thus preserved in the earth. The outlines of some of the small fields where the crops were grown can still be seen today, particularly in photographs taken from the air. Wooden plows were used, often fitted with an iron plowshare to turn the soil more deeply. Grain was harvested with sickles; it was then dried, sometimes in hypocausts specially built for the purpose; then it was threshed, and winnowed by being thrown into the wind so that the chaff was blown from the grain. Farming tools were made of wood and iron; they included spades, pitchforks, and scythes, some of which have been found by archaeologists.



Most villas seem to have kept animals, such as cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, and horses, in addition to geese and hens. Bees were kept to produce honey, which was used to sweeten food (there was no sugar in the Roman world). Many fruits and vegetables were grown, including some (like cherries and peas) which had been brought to Britain by the Romans.

The villas could not produce everything they needed, but home-made products such as leather, meat, timber, and honey could be traded for shellfish, salt, wine, pottery, and ironware.

Many villas were supervised by a manager or overseer. He would probably, like Varica, be a slave or a freedman. The manager was responsible for buying any food or other goods that could not be produced on the villa's own land and looking after the buildings and slaves. In his book On Agriculture, the writer Columella says that the manager should be middle-aged and toughened from childhood by farm work.

The Slaves

Farm slaves were described by one Roman landowner as just "farming equipment with voices." Most of Salvius' farm slaves would be British, whereas many of his house slaves would be imported from abroad. Slaves working on the land lived a much harsher life than domestic slaves, and slaves working in the mines had the harshest life of all. Some slaves were kept in chains; Columella says: "For chained slaves there should be an underground prison, as healthy as possible, letting in light through a number of narrow windows built above hand's reach." Slave-chains have been discovered in Britain, designed to fasten several slaves together by their necks. (See the photograph on page 6.)

In theory, the law gave slaves some protection: for example, any owner who killed a sick slave could be charged with murder. In practice, these laws were often ignored, as in the story of Salvius and the Cantiacan miners. However, in the first century A.D. slaves were becoming increasingly scarce and therefore expensive; this is why Columella wanted his prison to be healthy.

Many agricultural slaves were born as slaves. Columella recommends rewards for slave-women who produce many children. Such "home-grown" slaves were not cheap, since they took no part in the farming until they were old enough to work, but the son of a skilled slave would be able to learn his father's trade at a very early age. Some of these slaves are known to us by name. For example, a gravestone from Chester (in northwestern England, near the Welsh border) was set up by a master in memory of three of his slaves who died young: a slave-boy aged twelve and two ten-year-olds called Atilianus and Anti-Atilianus, probably twins.

Words and Phrases Checklist

Verbs in the checklists for Unit 2 are usually listed as in the Unit 2 Language Information Section. See p.198 of that Section for details and practice examples. Nouns in the checklists for Stages 13-16 are usually listed as they were in the Unit 1 Language Information Section, pp. 214-21.

adveniō, advenīre, advēnī	arrival	ita vērō	yes
aedificium	building	nōlō	I do not want
aeger	sick, ill	novus	new
alter; alterum	the other, the second	nūllus	not any, no
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī	sing	numerō, numerāre, numeravī	count
cēterī	the others, the rest	ōrdō: ordinem	row
coniūratiō: coniūratiōnem	plot	possum	I can, I am able
custōs: custōdem	guard	retineō, retinēre, retinui	keep
dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī	fall down	ruō, ruere, ruī	rush
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī	say	sē	himself, herself, themselves
excitō, excitāre, excitāvī	arouse, wake up	suāviter	sweetly
fessus	tired	trahō, trahere, traxī	drag
geminī	twins	volō	I want
hauriō, haurīre, hausī	draw, drink up	vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī	wound
horreum	barn, granary		
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī	kill		

Word Search

Match each definition with one of the words given below.

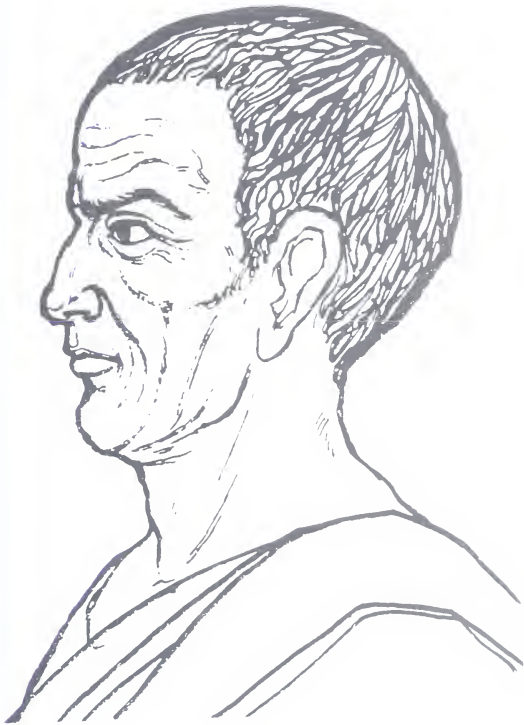
advent, conjure, deciduous, edifice, nullify, enumerate, vulnerable

- 1 : to invoke by oath or magic spell
- 2 : easily wounded
- 3 : a structure or building
- 4 : having leaves that fall at the end of the growing season
- 5 : to list in detail
- 6 : an arrival
- 7 : to make ineffective or useless



Reconstruction of a Romano-British triclinium.

Stage 14



apud Salvium



Vārica: Phile! portā hanc amphoram in vīllam!

Philus: amphora magna est. difficile est mihi
magnam amphoram portāre.

Vārica: cūr?

Philus: quod ego sum senex.



Vārica: Loquāx! Anti-Loquāx! portāte hanc
amphoram in vīllam!

Loquāx: amphora gravis est. difficile est nōbīs
amphoram gravem portāre.

Vārica: cūr?

Loquāx: quod nōs sumus puerī.



Vārica: Bregāns! portā hās amphorās in villam!

Bregāns: amphorae gravēs sunt. difficile est mihi amphorās gravēs portāre.

Vārica: sed necesse est!

Bregāns: cūr?

Vārica: necesse est tibi amphorās portāre quod Philus est senex, quod Loquāx et frāter sunt puerī, et . . .

Bregāns: quod tū es vīlicus!

Rūfilla

Rūfilla in cubiculō sedet, duae ōrnātrīcēs prope eam stant et crīnēs compōnunt. Salvi ius intrat. Rūfilla, simulatque eum cōspicit, ōrnātrīcēs ē cubiculō dīmittit.

Rūfilla: Salvi! vir crūdēlis es, ego ad hanc villam venīre nōlēbam, in urbe Londiniō manēre volebam. Londinium est urbs pulcherrima, ubi multās amīcās habeo. difficile est mihi amīcās relinquere.

ornātrīcēs: ornatrix *hairdresser*
dīmittit: dīmittere *send away, dismiss*
crūdēlis *cruel*

amīcās: amica *friend*
relinquere *leave*

Londiniō: Londinium *London*

Salvius: Rūfilla! quam levis es! ubi in urbe Londiniō habitābāmus, cotīdiē ad mē veniēbās. cotīdiē mihi ita dīcēbās,

“Semprōnia, amīca mea, est fortūnātor quam ego. marītum optimum habet. marītus eī rēs pretiōsās semper dat. villam eī prōmīsīt. ego quoque villam habēre volō, sed tū mihi nihil dās.” 10

tandem villam tibi dedī, sed etiam nunc nōn es contenta.

Rūfilla: sed ego villam prope urbem habēre volēbam. haec villa ab urbe longē abest. 15

Salvius: tū ipsa hanc villam ēlēgistī. ego, quamquam pretium magnum erat, eam libenter ēmī. nōnne haec villa est ēlēgāns? nōnne etiam magnifica?

Rūfilla: sed hiems iam appropinquat. amīcae meae semper in urbe hiemant. nōn commodum est mihi in villā hiemāre. 20
decōrum est mihi cum amīcīs hiemāre. mātṛōna Rōmāna sum. amīcās meās vīsītāre nōn possum. in hōc locō sōla sum.

Salvius: quid dīxistī? sōla es? decem ancillās habēs, novem servōs, duās ōrnātrīcēs, coquum Aegyptium . . . 25

Rūfilla: et marītum dūrum et crūdēlem. nihil intellegis! nihil cūrās!
(*exit lacrimāns.*)

levis	<i>changeable, inconsistent</i>
fortūnātor:	
fortūnātus	<i>lucky</i>
etiam	<i>even</i>
ab urbe	<i>from the city</i>
tū ipsa	<i>you yourself</i>
pretium	<i>price</i>
libenter	<i>gladly</i>
ēlēgāns	<i>tasteful, elegant</i>
hiems	<i>winter</i>
appropinquat:	
appropinquāre	<i>approach</i>
hiemant: hiemāre	<i>spend the winter</i>
commodum:	
commodus	<i>convenient</i>
mātṛōna	<i>lady</i>
decōrum: decōrus	<i>right, proper</i>
novem	<i>nine</i>
lacrimāns	<i>weeping, crying</i>



Portrait of a wealthy Roman woman.



Relief showing
a Roman
woman with
her slave-girls.

Domitilla cubiculum parat



“Domitilla! Domitilla! ubi es?” clāmāvit Marcia. Marcia anus erat.

“in hortō sum, Marcia. quid vīs?” respondit Domitilla. “fessa sum, quod diū labōrāvī.”

“necesse est nōbīs cubiculum parāre,” inquit Marcia. “domina nōbīs hoc mandāvit, quod familiārem expectat.”

5

“ēheu! semper labōrō; numquam ōtiōsa sum,” inquit Domitilla.

“puella ignāvissima es,” inquit Marcia. “domina ipsa mē ad tē mīsīt. necesse est tibi cubiculum verrere. necesse est mihi pavīmentum lavāre. curre ad culīnam! quaere scōpās!”

Domitilla ex hortō discessit et ad culīnam lentē ambulābat. īrāta erat, quod cubiculum verrere nōlēbat.

10

“ego ōrnātrīx sum,” inquit. “nōs ōrnātrīcēs nihil sordidum

anus	old woman
quid vīs?	what do you want?
diū	for a long time
necesse	necessary
hoc mandāvit	has given this order
familiārem: familiāris	relative

domina ipsa	the mistress herself
verrere	sweep
scōpās: scōpae	broom
lentē	slowly
nihil sordidum	no dirty jobs

facimus. nōn decōrum est ōrnātrīcibus cubiculum verrere.”

subitō Domitilla cōnsilium cēpit et ad culīnam quam celerrimē festīnāvit. simulac culīnam intrāvit, lacrimīs sē trādīdit.

15

Volūbilis attonitus, “mea columba,” inquit, “cūr lacrimās?”

“lacrimō quod miserrima sum,” ancilla coquō respondit. “per tōtum diem labōrāvī. quam fessa sum! nunc necesse est mihi cubiculum parāre. nōn diūtius labōrāre possum.”

“mea columba, nōlī lacrimāre!” inquit Volūbilis. “ego tibi cubiculum parāre possum.”

20

“Volūbilis! quam benignus es!” susurrāvit ancilla.

coquus cum ancillā ad cubiculum revēnit. dīligenter labōrāvit et cubiculum fēcīt pūrum. ancilla laeta dīxit,

“meum mel! meae dēliciae!” et coquō ōsculum dedit.

25

coquus ērubescēns ad culīnam revēnit.

lacrimīs sē trādīdit *burst into tears*

miserrima *very miserable, very sad*

diūtius *any longer*

nōlī lacrimāre *don't cry*

pūrum: pūrus *clean, spotless*

mel *honey*

ōsculum *kiss*

ērubescēns *blushing*

About the Language

1 Study the following sentences:

1 **magnus** servus labōrābat.

*The **large** slave was working.*

2 dominus servō **fessō**
praemium dedit.

*The master gave a reward to
the **tired** slave.*

3 agricola servum **ignāvum**
pūnīvit.

*The farmer punished the **lazy**
slave.*

The words in boldface are *adjectives*. They are used to describe nouns.
In each of these examples, the adjective is describing the slave.

2 Adjectives change their endings to match the *case* of the nouns they describe.

In sentence 1 above, **magnus** is nominative because it describes a nominative noun (**servus**).

In sentence 2, **fessō** is dative, because it describes a dative noun (**servō**).

In sentence 3, **ignāvum** is accusative, because it describes an accusative noun (**servum**).

- 3** Translate the following examples and pick out the adjective in each sentence:

- 1 ancilla perterrita ad culīnam contendit.
- 2 coquus ancillam perterritam salūtāvit.
- 3 cīvēs mercātōrem fortem laudāvērunt.
- 4 cīvēs mercātōrī fortī praemium dedērunt.
- 5 agricola parvum puerum cōspexit.
- 6 agricola parvō puerō equum ostendit.

Find the noun described by each adjective, and say whether the noun and adjective are nominative, accusative, or dative.

- 4** Adjectives also change their endings to match the *number* (i.e. singular or plural) of the nouns they describe. An adjective is singular if it describes a singular noun, and plural if it describes a plural noun. For example:

parvus servus dormiēbat.	<i>The small slave was sleeping.</i>
multī servī bibēbant.	<i>Many slaves were drinking.</i>

- 5** Translate the following examples and pick out the adjective in each sentence:

- 1 fēminae laetae per viās ambulābant.
- 2 fēmina laeta per viās ambulābat.
- 3 gladiātor leōnem ferōcem necāvit.
- 4 gladiātor leōnēs ferōcēs necāvit.
- 5 pictūra pulchra erat in ātriō.
- 6 vīlicus multōs amīcōs in tabernā vīdit.

Find the noun described by each adjective, and say whether the noun and adjective are singular or plural.

- 6** When an adjective changes its ending in this way it is said to *agree*, in case and number, with the noun it describes.
- 7** Adjectives like **magnus** and **multī**, which indicate *size* or *quantity*, usually come before the noun they describe; other adjectives usually come after the noun.

Rūfilla cubiculum ōrnat

tum Marcia cubiculum intrāvit. lentē prōcēdēbat, quod urnam portābat. Marcia urnam vix portāre poterat, quod anus erat. ubi Domitillam cōspexit, clāmāvit,

“cūr nōn labōrās? puella ignāvissima es.”

“quam stulta es!” respondit Domitilla. “diligenter labōrāvī. cubiculum fēcī pūrum. nunc necesse est tibi pavīmentum lavāre.”

Marcia, quamquam erat attonita, Domitillae nihil dīxit. sōla pavīmentum lavābat. tandem rem cōnfēcit.

“euge!” inquit Domitilla. “optimē labōrāvistī. nitidum est pavīmentum!”

Rūfilla vōcēs audīvit et intrāvit. Domitilla, postquam eam cōspexit, cubiculum dēmōnstrāvit.

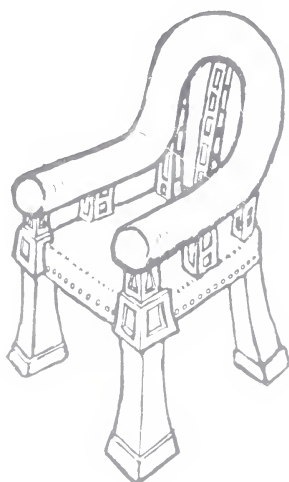
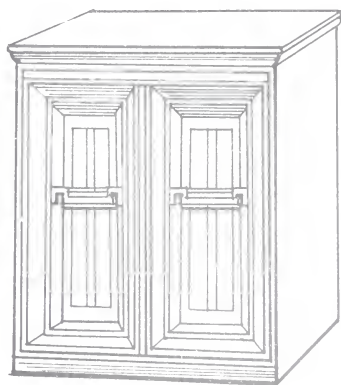
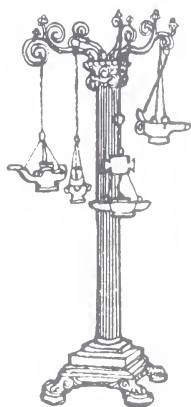
“cubiculum tibi parāvimus, domina, et pavīmentum fēcimus nitidum.”

“bene labōrāvistis,” ancillīs respondit Rūfilla. “sed, quamquam nitidum est pavīmentum, familiāris meus in hōc cubiculō dormīre nōn potest. nam cubiculum est inēlegāns. necesse est nōbīs id ōrnāre. familiāris meus est vir urbānus.”

“tablīnum est ēlegāns,” inquit Domitilla. “in tablīnō, ubi dominus labōrat, sunt multae rēs pretiōsae.”

“ita vērō,” inquit Rūfilla, “in tablīnō est armārium ēlegantissimum. in tablīnō sunt sella aēnea et candēlābrum aureum. age! Domitilla, necesse est nōbīs ad tablīnum īre.”

ōrnat: ōrnāre	<i>decorate</i>	inēlegāns	<i>unattractive</i>
urnam: urna	<i>bucket</i>	id	<i>it</i>
vix	<i>hardly, scarcely</i>	urbānus	<i>fashionable, sophisticated</i>
sōla	<i>alone, on her own</i>	armārium	<i>chest, cupboard</i>
nitidum: nitidus	<i>gleaming, brilliant</i>	aēnea	<i>made of bronze</i>
vōcēs: vōx	<i>voice</i>	candēlābrum	<i>lamp-stand, candelabrum</i>
dēmōnstrāvit:		aureum: aureus	<i>golden, made of gold</i>
dēmōnstrāre	<i>point out, show</i>	age!	<i>come on!</i>
bene	<i>well</i>	īre	<i>to go</i>
nam	<i>for</i>		



About the Language

1 Study the following sentence:

cīvis servum **trīstem** salūtāvit.

*The citizen greeted the **sad** slave.*

The adjective **trīstem** is in the accusative case because it describes the accusative noun **servum**.

2 Although **trīstem** and **servum** are both accusative, they do not have the same ending. This is because they belong to different declensions, and have different ways of forming their cases. **trīstis** belongs to the third declension and **servus** belongs to the second declension.

3 Translate the following examples:

- 1 Quīntus fābulam mīrābilem nārrāvit.
- 2 in villā habitābat senex stultus.
- 3 gladiātor bēstiās ferōcēs agitābat.
- 4 dominus amīcō fidēlī dēnāriōs trādīdit.
- 5 omnēs libertī vīnum bibēbant.

Pick out the adjective in each sentence and say which noun it is describing.

in tablīnō



postrīdiē Salvius et Philus in tablīnō sunt. intrat Rūfilla.

Rūfilla: mī Salvī!

Salvius: occupātus sum! necesse est mihi hās epistulās dictāre. ego rem celeriter cōficere volō. ubi est sella mea?
(*Salvius sellam frūstrā quaerit.*)
heus! ubi est ista sella?

5

Rūfilla: mī cārissime! aliquid tibi dīcere volō.

Salvius: tē nunc audīre nōn possum. epistulās dictāre volō. ecce! Philus parātus adest. stilī et cērae adsunt – heus! ubi est armārium meum? quis cēpit?

10

Rūfilla: Salvī! audī!

(*tandem Salvius uxōrī cēdit et Philum dīmittit.*)

Salvius: ēheu! abī, Phile! nōn commodum est mihi epistulās dictāre.

Rūfilla: bene! nunc aliquid tibi dīcere possum. ubi in urbe Londiniō nūper eram, familiārem convēnī.

15

Salvius: tot familiārēs habēs! eōs numerāre nōn possum.

Rūfilla: sed hic familiāris est Quīntus Caecilius Iūcundus. ubi mōns Vesuvius urbem Pompēiōs dēlēvit, Quīntus ex urbe effūgit. quam cōmis est! quam urbānus!

20

Salvius: hercle! ego Pompēiānīs nōn crēdō. paucī probī sunt, cēteri mendācēs. ubi in Campāniā mīlitābam, multōs Pompēiānōs cognōscēbam. mercātōrēs Pompēiānī nōs mīlitēs semper dēcipiēbant.

Rūfilla: stultissimus es! familiāris meus nōn est mercātor. Quīntus vir nōbilis est. eum ad vīllam nostram invītāvī.

25

Salvius: quid dīxistī? Pompēiānum invītāvistī? ad vīllam nostram?

Rūfilla: decōrum est mihi familiārem meum hūc invītāre. ancillae familiārī meō cubiculum parāvērunt. ancillae, quod cubiculum inēlegāns erat, sellam armāriumque tuum in eō posuērunt.

30

Salvius: īnsāna es, uxor! Pompēiānī mendāciōrēs sunt quam Britannī. num tū sellam et armārium ē tablīnō extrāxistī?

Rūfilla: et candēlābrum.

Salvius: prō dī immortalēs! ō candēlābrum meum! ō mē miserum!

35

mī Salvī!	<i>my dear Salvius!</i>
heus!	<i>hey!</i>
cārissime	<i>dearest</i>
aliquid	<i>something</i>
cēdit; cēdere	<i>give in, give way</i>
bene!	<i>good!</i>
nūper	<i>recently</i>
convēnī; convenīre	<i>meet</i>
tot	<i>so many</i>
cōmis	<i>courteous, friendly</i>
paucī	<i>a few</i>
militābam; militāre	<i>be a soldier</i>
cognōscēbam; cognōscere	<i>get to know</i>
militēs; miles	<i>soldier</i>
in eō	<i>in it</i>
num tū extrāxistī?	<i>surely you did not take?</i>
prō dī immortalēs!	<i>heavens above!</i>
ō mē miserum!	<i>Oh wretched me! Oh dear!</i>

- 1 Why has Rufilla come to see Salvius?
- 2 Why does she address him as “mī Salvī” and “mī cārissime”?
- 3 What mood is Salvius in? Why?
- 4 Why is Salvius not able to find his chair and cupboard? What else is missing from the study?
- 5 Why is Rufilla pleased about Quintus’ visit? Why does Salvius not like the idea?

Practicing the Language

1 Translate into English:

- Salvius: Vārica, quaere Bregantem!
- Vārica: ego Bregantem quaerere nōn possum. ē villā discēdere nōn possum. Rūfilla mē exspectat.
- Salvius: Loquāx, Anti-Loquāx, custōdīte villam!
- Loquāx: villam custōdīre nōn possumus. Rūfilla nōs exspectat.
- Salvius: Volūbilis, vocā servōs ad mē!
- Volūbilis: servōs ad tē vocāre nōn possum. domina nostra eōs exspectat.
(Rūfilla intrat.)
- Salvius: Rūfilla, manē!
- Rūfilla: manēre nōn possum. servī me exspectant.

Quīntus advenit

Quīntus ad villam advēnit. Salvius ē villā contendit et eum salūtāvit.

“mī Quīnte!” inquit. “expectātissimus es! cubiculum optimum tibi parāvimus.”

Salvius Quīntum in tablīnum dūxit, ubi Rūfilla sedēbat. Rūfilla, postquam familiārem suum salūtāvit, suāviter rīsīt. 5

“cēnam modicam tibi parāvī,” inquit. “tibi ostreās parāvī et garum Pompēiānum. post cēnam cubiculum tibi ostendere volō.”

Salvius, postquam Quīntus cēnam cōsūmpsīt, dē urbe Pompēiīs quaerēbat.

“ubi in Campāniā militābam, saepe urbem Pompēiōs vīsītābam. nōne illa clādēs terribilis erat?” 10

Rūfilla interpellāvit,

“cūr Quīntum nostrum vexās? nōn decōrum est. difficile est Quīntō tantam clādem commemorāre.”

Rūfilla ad Quīntum sē convertit. 15

“fortasse, mī Quīnte, fessus es. cubiculum tibi parāvī. cubiculum nōn est ōrnātum. in eō sunt armārium modicum et candēlābrum parvum.”

Salvius irātus nihil dīxit.

Quīntus, postquam cubiculum vīdit, exclāmāvit, 20

“quam ēlegāns est cubiculum! ego nihil ēlegantius vīdī.”

“cōsentiō,” inquit Salvius. “cubiculum tuum ēlegantius est quam tablīnum meum.”

expectātissimus: expectātus	<i>welcome</i>
modicam	<i>ordinary, little</i>
ostreās: ostrea	<i>oyster</i>
garum	<i>sauce</i>
clādēs	<i>disaster</i>
terribilis	<i>terrible</i>
interpellāvit: interpellāre	<i>interrupt</i>
tantam	<i>so great, such a great</i>
commemorāre	<i>talk about</i>
sē convertit: sē convertere	<i>turn</i>
ōrnātum: ōrnātus	<i>elaborately furnished, decorated</i>
ēlegantius	<i>more elegant</i>

tripodes argenteī

servī in cubiculō Quīntum vestiēbant. ancilla eī togam tulit. Anti-Loquāx cubiculum intrāvit et Quīntō dīxit,

“necesse est dominō meō ad aulam īre. rēx Cogidubnus hodiē sacrificium facit. rēx omnēs nōbilēs ad aulam invītāvit.”

“rēgem hodiē vīsītāmus?” rogāvit Quīntus. “ubi in urbe Londiniō 5
habitābam, saepe dē hōc rēge audiēbam. necesse est mihi dōnum
ferre. fortasse est aliquid in arcā meā.”

iuvenis ad arcam iit et duōs tripodas argenteōs extrāxit.

Anti-Loquāx attonitus ē cubiculō exiit et Salviō rem nārrāvit. 10
Salvius, postquam dē tripodibus argenteīs audīvit, ad cellārium
contendit.

“necesse est mihi rēgem Cogidubnum vīsītāre,” inquit. “dōnum
eī ferre volō.”

“nōn difficile est nōbīs dōnum invenīre, domine,” Salviō
respondit cellārius. “ecce! urna aēnea. antiq̄uissima est. placetne 15
tibi?”

“mihi nōn placet,” inquit Salvius. “dōnum aēneum Cogidubnō
ferre nōlō.”

cellārius Salviō amphoram dēmōnstrāvit.

“nōnne vīnum est dōnum optimum, domine?” inquit cellārius. 20

“minimē!” respondit Salvius. “Cogidubnus multās amphorās
habet, multumque vīnum. rēx vīnum ex Ītaliā cotīdiē importat.”

tum Salvius, ubi statuam parvam cōspexit, clāmāvit,

“euge! hanc statuam rēgī ferre possum. aurāta est statua. 25
Quīntus rēgī dōnum argenteum ferrē vult; ego tamen aurātum
dōnum ferre possum!”

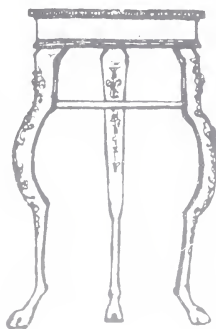
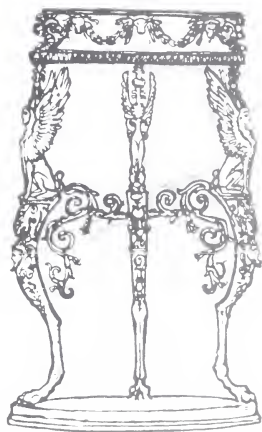
“domine! nōn dēbēs,” inquit cellārius.

“cūr nōn dēbeō?” rogāvit Salvius.

“Cogidubnus ipse tibi hanc statuam dedit!” inquit cellārius.

“hercle!” clāmāvit Salvius. “necesse est mihi istam urnam ad 30
aulam portāre.”

tripodes	<i>tripods</i>	cellārium: cellārius	<i>steward</i>
argenteī: argenteus	<i>made of silver</i>	urna	<i>jar, jug</i>
vestiēbant: vestīre	<i>dress</i>	importat: importāre	<i>import</i>
tulit: ferre	<i>bring</i>	aurāta	<i>gilded, gold-plated</i>
aulam: aula	<i>palace</i>	nōn dēbēs	<i>you shouldn't, mustn't</i>
arcā: arca	<i>strong-box, chest</i>		



About the Language

- 1 In Stage 13, you met the present tense of **possum**. *I am able*:

Loquāx currere potest.

Loquax is able to run.

ego labōrāre nōn possum.

I am not able to work.

- 2 You have now met **possum** in the imperfect tense:

Loquāx currere poterat.

Loquax was able to run.

ego labōrāre nōn poteram.

I wasn't able to work.

or

Loquax could run.

or

I couldn't work.

- 3 The complete imperfect tense of **possum** is:

(ego)	poteram	<i>I was able (or I could)</i>
(tū)	poterās	<i>you (singular) were able</i>
	poterat	<i>s/he was able</i>
(nōs)	poterāmus	<i>we were able</i>
(vōs)	poterātis	<i>you (plural) were able</i>
	poterant	<i>they were able</i>

- 4 Further examples:

1 servī sōlem vidēre nōn poterant.

2 Bregāns amphoram portāre nōn poterat.

3 nōs labōrāre nōn poterāmus.

4 tū in urbe manēre nōn poterās.

The Romans in Britain

The first Roman general to lead his soldiers into Britain was Julius Caesar, in 55 B.C. Britain was inhabited at the time by a number of different tribes each ruled by its own king or chieftain. Caesar wrote an account of his visit to Britain, in which he described the inhabitants as fierce warriors, living on good agricultural or pasture land, in a country rich in timber and minerals. Their skills included not only farming, but also making pottery and working with iron and bronze.

Caesar wanted to find out whether the wealth of Britain was worth the trouble of occupying it with Roman troops. But after another short visit in 54 B.C., he did not explore any further. His attention was needed for wars elsewhere, first in Gaul (modern France and Belgium) and then in a struggle against his own Roman government. Ten years later, he was assassinated.

Caesar's great-nephew Augustus became the first Roman emperor. He and his successors kept away from Britain for more than half a century. But in A.D. 43 the Emperor Claudius decided to invade. Perhaps he had received fresh information about British wealth; more probably he needed some military success for his own prestige. Claudius did not lead the invasion force himself, but he followed it, spending



Gold denarius struck by the Emperor Claudius to commemorate his victory over the Britons. On one side is a portrait of Claudius; on the other he is shown on horseback between piles of trophies, above a triumphal arch.

sixteen days in Britain, watching his army's assault on Colchester and giving official approval to the actions of his commander Aulus Plautius.

Eleven British kings surrendered after this campaign, and Britain was declared a Roman province, with Aulus Plautius as its first governor. This meant that the Romans were taking over the country as part of their empire. From then on, Roman officials would enforce Roman law and collect Roman taxes. Romans would be able to buy land in Britain and use it for agriculture or mining. And the Roman army would be present to keep the peace in the province, firmly and sometimes brutally.

Some British rulers, like King Cogidubnus in the south, chose to co-operate with the invaders and become allies and dependents of Rome. Others, such as Caratacus in the west, and Queen Boudica in the east, resisted the Romans bitterly but unsuccessfully. The Romans gradually pushed the frontier further north, to include the Midlands and Wales, then the northern kingdom of Brigantia.



Bronze hand-mirror of Celtic craftsmanship, made in Roman Britain.



Britain in the First Century A.D.

Showing main roads and towns, and the main tribal groupings. The map also shows the principal areas of mining at that time. Roman names are given in italics.

Important Events and Dates

<i>Date</i>	<i>Emperor</i>	<i>Event</i>
B.C.		
55, 54		Julius Caesar's expeditions to Britain
44		<i>Assassination of Julius Caesar</i>
27	Augustus	
A.D.		
14	Tiberius	
37	Gaius (Caligula)	
41	Claudius	
43		Invasion of Britain under Aulus Plautius Claudius enters Colchester in triumph Vespasian's expedition against the Durotriges Britain becomes a Roman province
51		Defeat of Caratacus
54	Nero	
61		Revolt of Boudica
68–69	Galba, Otho, Vitellius	Civil war in Rome: dispute over the succession of a new emperor
69	Vespasian	
75		Fishbourne palace near Chichester is built
78		Salvius becomes member of Arval Brotherhood Agricola comes to Britain as governor
79	Titus	<i>Eruption of Vesuvius</i>
81	Domitian	Salvius goes to Britain
83–84		Agricola's campaigns in Scotland

The stories in Stages 13 and 14 are set in the time of Britain's most famous governor, Gnaeus Julius Agricola. Agricola stayed in the province for seven years (A.D. 78-84), longer than any other governor; he led his army into the Scottish highlands where he built a number of forts, some of which are still being discovered by aerial photography. But Agricola's purpose was not just military victory. His son-in-law, the historian Tacitus, says: "He wanted to accustom the Britons to a life of peace, by providing them with the comforts of civilization. He gave personal encouragement and official aid to the building of temples, forums, and houses He educated the sons of the chiefs . . . so that instead of hating the Latin language, they began to speak it well."



Aerial view of a Roman road (Watling Street in England) still used by traffic today.

Gradually, a network of roads spread across the province. One of the earliest, the Fosse Way, ran from Exeter to Lincoln (see the map on page 38) and may have marked the original “frontier” during the governorship of Aulus Plautius; it is still possible to walk or drive along stretches of it. Other roads (such as Watling Street, which is roughly followed by a modern highway) acted as links between the lowland areas of the southeast, where the Romans quickly gained control, and the hillier country in the north and west, where fighting continued on and off for many years and where the most important Roman forts were situated.

The roads were originally built for the use of Roman soldiers; but before long they were being extensively used by merchants as well. Trade between Britain and the European continent increased rapidly. Among the items exported from Britain in Roman times were three products mentioned in Stage 13: grain, hunting dogs, and iron from mines in the southeast. Gold, tin, and lead were also mined in Roman Britain. (Refer to the map on page 38 to locate the areas where these metals were mined.) In return, Britain imported many goods from Rome and the rest of the empire. Among them were olive oil and wine, carried in amphorae



A model of the Temple of Claudius at Colchester in England.

of the kind shown on pages 22–23. Romans who came to stay in Britain brought their own way of life with them; and many Britons, especially members of the leading families, wanted to imitate the manners of the invaders and to become as Roman as possible.

Some Britons became very wealthy from this trade and welcomed the Romans enthusiastically; others suffered severely from the arrival of the Romans; others again were hardly affected at all. Many of them no doubt had mixed feelings about becoming part of the Roman empire. It gave them a share in Roman prosperity and the Roman way of life; but it also meant Roman taxes and a Roman governor backed by Roman troops. However, whether welcome or unwelcome, the Romans were to remain in Britain for nearly four hundred years.

Words and Phrases Checklist

antīquus	<i>old, ancient</i>
apud	<i>among, at the house of</i>
argenteus	<i>made of silver</i>
attonitus	<i>astonished</i>
aula	<i>palace</i>
cotīdiē	<i>every day</i>
decōrus	<i>right, proper</i>
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī	<i>destroy</i>
deus	<i>god</i>
dictō, dictāre, dictāvī	<i>dictate</i>
difficilis	<i>difficult</i>
dīligenter	<i>carefully</i>
domina	<i>lady (of the house), mistress</i>
dōnum	<i>present, gift</i>
familiāris: familiārem	<i>relative, relation</i>
fidēlis	<i>faithful, loyal</i>
ipse, ipsa	<i>himself, herself</i>
iste	<i>that</i>
lavō, lavāre, lāvī	<i>wash</i>
marītus	<i>husband</i>
necesse	<i>necessary</i>
nōbilis	<i>noble, of noble birth</i>
num?	<i>surely . . . not?</i>
pretiōsus	<i>expensive, precious</i>
quam	<i>how</i>
quamquam	<i>although</i>
-que	<i>and</i>
rēx: rēgem	<i>king</i>
sella	<i>chair</i>
ubi	<i>when</i>

Word Search

delete, diligence, fidelity, indecorous, lavatory, marital, regal

- 1: royal, kingly
- 2: to omit, cancel, or erase
- 3: loyalty
- 4: studious attention
- 5: pertaining to marriage
- 6: washroom
- 7: improper, inappropriate

Stage 15



rēx
Cogidubnus



multī Britannī ad aulam
venērunt. senex, quī
scēptrum tenēbat, erat
rēx Cogidubnus.



fēmina prope
Cogidubnum sedēbat.
fēmina, quae diadēma
gerēbat, erat rēgīna.



multī Rōmānī Cogidubnō
rēs pretiōsās dabant.
dōnum, quod rēgem
maximē dēlectāvit, erat
equus.



duae ancillae ad rēgem
vērunt. vīnum, quod
ancillae ferēbant, erat in
paterā aureā. rēx vīnum
libāvit.



servus agnum ad āram
dūxit. agnus, quem
servus dūcēbat, erat
victima.



sacerdōs victimam
īspexit. victima, quam
servus tenēbat, bālāvit.
sacerdōs victimam
interfēcit.

ad aulam

Salvius et Quīntus ad aulam cum multīs servīs prōcēdēbant. agmen erat splendidum. in prīmā parte decem servī ībant. hī servī erant praecursōrēs; virgās longās tenēbant. in mediō agmine Salvius et Quīntus equitābant. ancilla, quae post Salvium ambulābat, urnam portābat. servus, quī post Quīntum ambulābat, tripodas portābat. 5
aliae ancillae flōrēs et unguentum ferēbant. vīgintī servī cum puellīs ībant. agmen splendidum tōtam viam complēbat.

Britannī quoque multī ad aulam ībant. uxōrēs liberōsque sēcum dūcēbant. magna turba erat in viā. tum Vārica, quī cum praecursōribus equitābat, ad Salvium rediit. 10

“domine,” inquit, “difficile est nōbīs prōcēdere, quod hī Britannī viam complent. ē viā exīre nōlunt. quid facere dēbeō?”

Salvius irātus eī dīxit,

“necesse est praecursōribus Britannōs ē viā ēmovēre. nōn decōrum est Britannīs cīvēs Rōmānōs impedīre. ego quam celerrimē īre volō, quod rēx nōs exspectat.” 15

Vārica, quī dominum irātum timēbat, ad praecursōrēs rediit et clāmāvit,

“asinī estis! virgās habētis. ēmovēte Britannōs!”

praecursōrēs statim virgās vibrābant. multī Britannī in fossās dēsiluērunt, quod virgās timēbant. duo iuvenēs tamen impavidī in viā cōsistēbant. prope iuvenēs erat plastrum, quod tōtam viam claudēbat. 20

“cūr viam clauditis?” rogāvit Vārica. “necesse est dominō meō ad aulam īre.” 25

“nōs quoque ad aulam contendimus. rēgem vīsītāre volumus,” respondērunt iuvenēs. “sed plastrum movēre nōn possumus, quod plastrum rotam frāctam habet. amīcus noster, quem nōs exspectāmus, aliam rotam quaerit. amīcum exspectāre dēbēmus.”

Vārica anxius ad Salvium rediit, et eī rem nārrāvit. 30

“plastrum, quod vidēs, domine, rotam frāctam habet. difficile est nōbīs prōcēdere, quod hoc plastrum tōtam viam claudit.”

Salvius, quī nunc erat irātior quam antea, eum vituperāvit.

“num surdus es? caudex! nōn commodum est mihi in hōc locō manēre. quam celerrimē prōcēdere volō.” 35

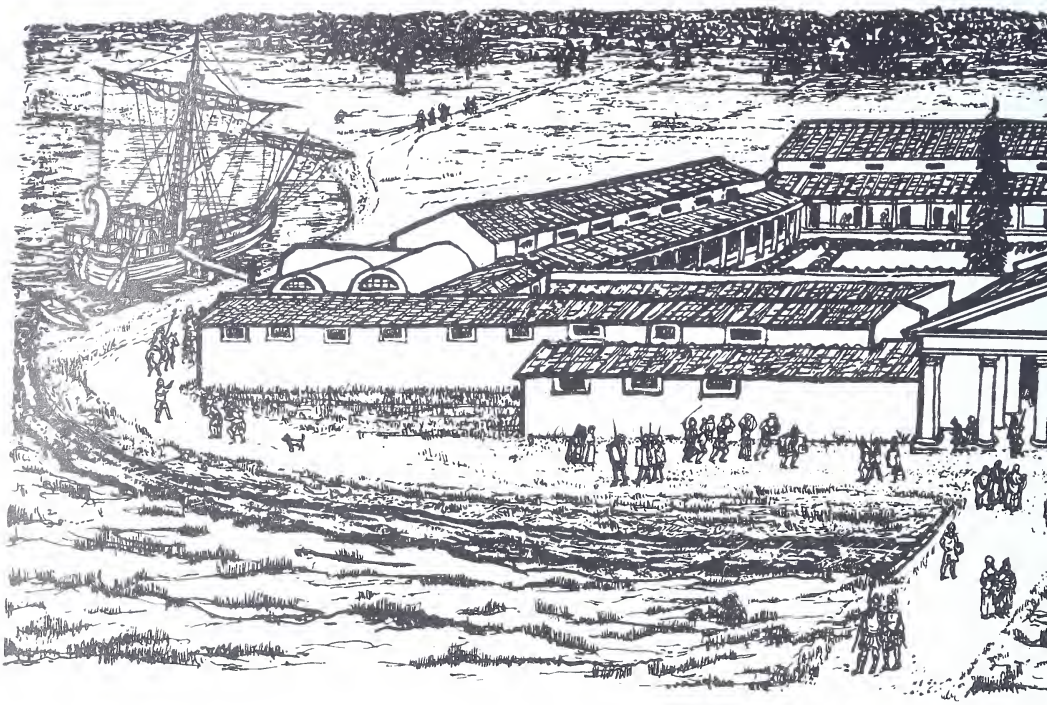
Vārica, postquam ad plastrum rediit, praecursōrēs vituperāvit.

“caudicēs!” clāmāvit. “ēmōvēte hoc plastrum! dēicite in fossam!”

praecursōrēs, postquam Vāricam audīvērunt, plastrum in fossam dēicērunt. iuvenēs, quī erant attonitī, vehementer resistēbant et cum praecursōribus pugnābant. tum praecursōrēs iuvenēs quoque in fossam dēicērunt. Salvius, quī rem spectābat, cachinnāns prōcessit.

“Britannī sunt molestissimī,” inquit Salvius. “semper nōs Rōmānōs vexant.”

agmen	<i>procession</i>
in primā parte	<i>in the forefront</i>
praecursōrēs: praecursor	<i>forerunner (sent ahead of a procession to clear the way)</i>
virgās: virga	<i>rod, stick</i>
equitābant: equitāre	<i>ride</i>
flōrēs: flōs	<i>flower</i>
unguentum	<i>perfume</i>
sēcum	<i>with them</i>
facere dēbeō	<i>ought to do</i>
ēmōvēre	<i>move, clear away</i>
impedīre	<i>delay, hinder</i>
fossās: fossa	<i>ditch</i>
dēsiluērunt: dēsilīre	<i>jump down</i>
impavidī: impavidus	<i>fearless</i>
cōsistēbant: cōsistere	<i>stand one's ground, stand firm</i>
plastrum	<i>wagon, cart</i>
claudēbat: claudere	<i>block</i>
movēre	<i>move</i>
rotam: rota	<i>wheel</i>
anteā	<i>before</i>
surdus	<i>deaf</i>
dēicite!	<i>throw!</i>
resistēbant: resistere	<i>resist</i>
cachinnāns	<i>laughing, cackling</i>
molestissimī: molestus	<i>troublesome</i>



caerimōnia

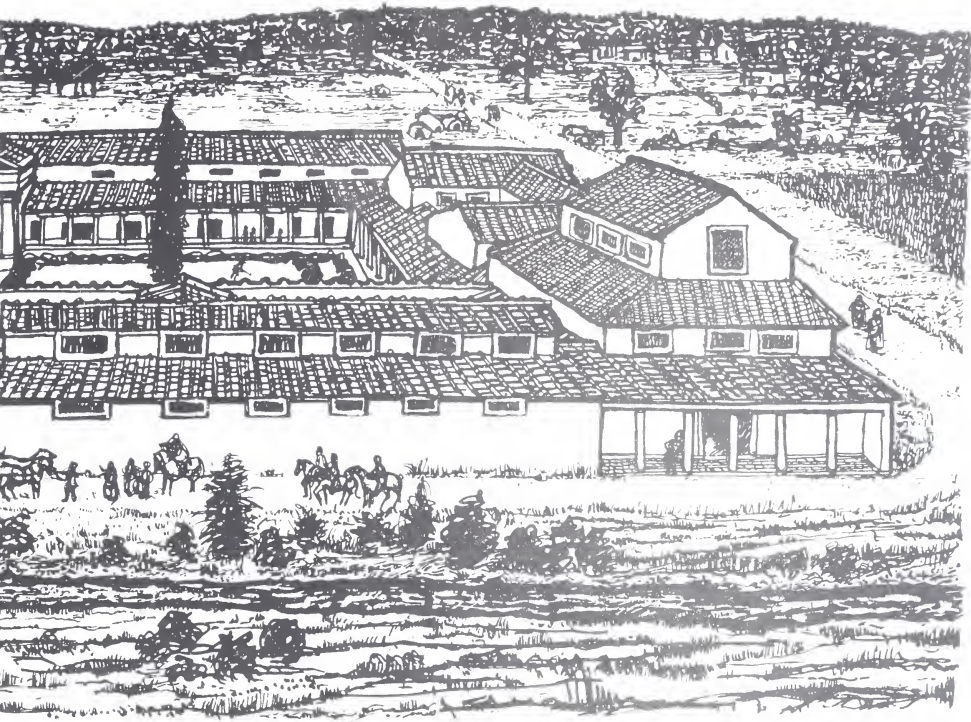
servus Salvium et Quīntum ad ātrium dūxit. illī, postquam ātrium intrāvērunt, magnam turbam vīdērunt. multī prīncipēs Britannicī in ātriō erant. sermōnēs inter sē habēbant. multae fēminae cum prīncipibus sedēbant. aderant multī Rōmānī, quī prope prīncipēs sedēbant. haec multitūdō, quae ātrium complēbat, magnum 5 clāmōrem faciēbat.

Quīntus et Salvius ad medium ātrium contendērunt. ubi illūc advēnērunt, lectum vīdērunt. in lectō erat effigiēs cērāta. Quīntus effigiem agnōvit.

“bona est effigiēs! imperātor Claudius est!” clāmāvit Quīntus. 10

“ita vērō,” respondit Salvius. “rēx Cogidubnus Claudium quotannīs honōrat. fabrī, quī ex Italiā veniunt, effigiem quotannīs faciunt. decōrum est Cogidubnō Claudium honōrāre. nam Claudius erat imperātor, quī Cogidubnum rēgem fēcit.”

subitō turba, quae prope iānuam stābat, ad terram prōcubuit. 15 prīncipēs Britannicī, quī in mediō ātriō sedēbant, celeriter



surrēxerunt. etiam Rōmānī tacēbant.

“rēx adest,” susurrāvit Salvius.

per iānuam intrāvit senex. parvus puer senem dūcēbat, quod claudicābat. rēx et puer lentē per turbam prōcēdēbant. rēx, postquam ad effigiem advēnit, vīnum libāvit. tum sacerdotēs, quī prope effigiem stābant, victimās ad rēgem dūxerunt. Cogidubnus victimās diligenter īnspectit. victima, quam rēx ēlēgit, erat agnus niveus. rēx eum sacrificāvit.

20

caerimōnia	<i>ceremony</i>	honōrat: honōrāre	<i>honor</i>
illī	<i>they</i>	fabrī: faber	<i>craftsman</i>
prīncipēs: prīnceps	<i>chief, chieftain</i>	prōcubuit: prōcumbere	<i>fall</i>
sermōnēs: sermō	<i>conversation</i>	claudicābat: claudicāre	<i>be lame, limp</i>
inter sē	<i>among themselves,</i> <i>with each other</i>	vīnum libāvit	<i>poured wine as</i> <i>an offering</i>
multitūdō	<i>crowd</i>	sacerdotēs: sacerdos	<i>priest</i>
illūc	<i>there</i>	victimās: victima	<i>victim</i>
effigiēs cērāta	<i>wax image</i>	agnus	<i>lamb</i>
bona	<i>good</i>	niveus	<i>snow-white</i>
imprātor	<i>emperor</i>	sacrificāvit: sacrificāre	<i>sacrifice</i>
quotanni	<i>every year</i>		

Britannici: Britannicus *British*
 Claudius *Roman emperor, A.D. 41-54*

“decōrum est nōbīs Claudium honōrāre,” inquit.

25

sacerdōtēs quoque victimās cēterās sacrificāvērunt. tum decem
prīncipēs Britannicī lectum in umerōs sustulērunt. effigiem ex ātriō
portāvērunt. post prīncipēs vērērunt sacerdōtēs, quī sollemniter
cantābant.

in āreā erat robus. prīncipēs, quī effigiem portābant, ad robum
cum magnā dignitatē prōcessērunt. effigiem in robum posuērunt.
servus rēgī facem trādīdit. tum rēx facem in robum posuit. mox
flammae robum cōsūmēbant. flammae, quae effigiem iam
tangēbant, cēram liquābant. omnēs effigiem intentē spectābant.
subitō aquila ex effigiē ēvolāvit. omnēs spectātōrēs plausērunt.

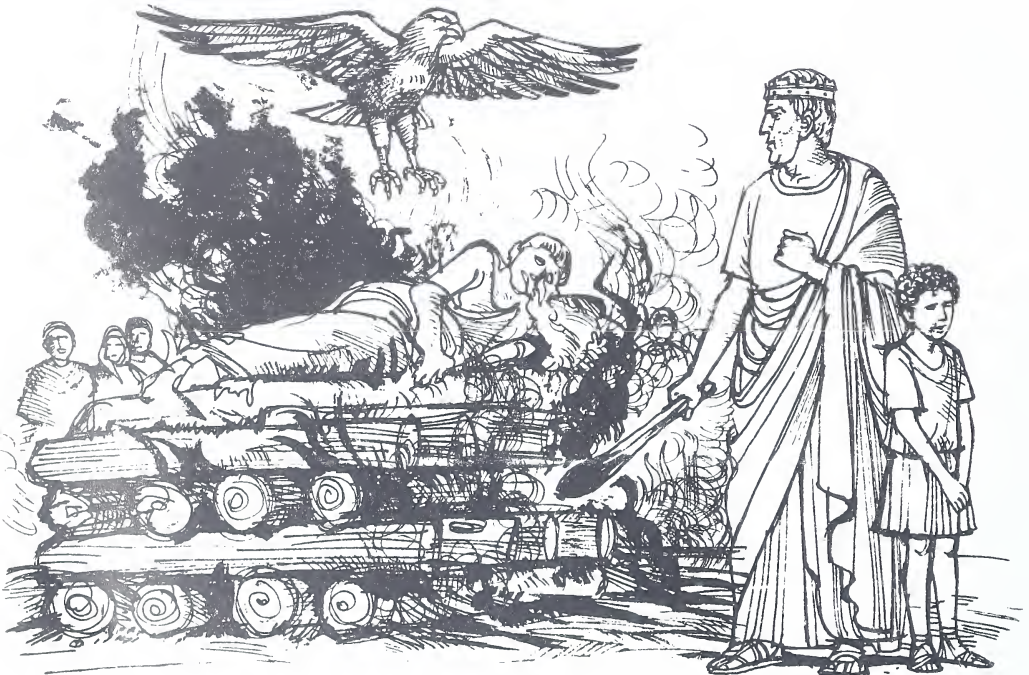
30

35

“ecce!” clāmāvit rēx, “deī Claudium arcessunt. animus ad deōs
ascendit.”

umerōs: umerus	<i>shoulder</i>
sustulērunt: tollere	<i>raise, lift up</i>
sollemniter cantābant	<i>were chanting solemnly</i>
robus	<i>pyre</i>
cum magnā dignitatē	<i>with great dignity</i>
facem: fax	<i>torch</i>
tangēbant: tangere	<i>touch</i>

liquābant: liquāre	<i>melt</i>
aquila	<i>eagle</i>
ēvolāvit: ēvolāre	<i>fly out</i>
arcessunt: arcessere	<i>summon, send for</i>
animus	<i>soul, spirit</i>
ascendit: ascendere	<i>climb, rise</i>



lūdī fūnebrēs



post caerimōniam rēx Cogidubnus pompam ad litus dūxit. ibi
 Britannī lūdōs fūnebrēs celebrāverunt, aderant Rēgnēnsēs,
 Cantiacī, et omnēs gentēs quae in amicitia cum Cogidubnō erant.

competītōrēs diū inter sē certābant. Cantiacī laetissimī erant,
 quod semper vincebant. vir Cantiacus celerius quam ceterī
 cucurrit. pugil Cantiacus, quī rōbustissimus erat, ceterōs pugilēs
 facile superāvit.

postremō erat certāmen nāvāle. nautae Cantiacī nāvem
 caeruleam parābant, nautae Rēgnēnsēs nāvem croceam.
 Dumnorix, prīnceps Rēgnēnsis, quī nāvī croceae praeerat,
 gubernātor perītissimus erat. Belimicus, prīnceps Cantiacus, nāvī

lūdī fūnebrēs	funeral games	vincebant: vincere	hē victoribus, am
pompam: pompa	procession	celerius	faster
ad litus	to the seashore	certāmen navale	boat race
gentēs: gēs	tribe	caeruleam	blue
amicitia: amicitia	friendship	croceam	yellow
competītōrēs: competītōr	competitor	gubernator	helmsman
certābant: certāre	compete		

Rēgnēnsēs name of a tribe in southern Britain

caeruleae praeerat. homō superbus et īsolēns erat. nautae, postquam nāvēs parāvērunt. signum intentē exspectābant. subito tuba sonuit. nāvēs statim prōsiluērunt: per undās ruēbant. rēmī undās vehementer pulsābant. 15

spectātōrēs. quī in lītore stābant. magnōs clāmōrēs sustulērunt. Cantiacī clāmābant, “nōs Belimicō favēmus! Belimicus vincere potest! nautae nostrī sunt optimī!”

Rēgnēnsēs tamen Dumnorigī favēbant: “nōs optimam nāvem habēmus! nōs optimum gubernātōrem habēmus! gubernātor Cantiacus est stultior quam asinus!” 20

procul in marī erat saxum ingēns. hoc saxum erat mēta. nāvēs ad mētā ruēbant. nāvis Rēgnēnsis, quam Dumnorix dīrigēbat, iam prior erat. ā tergō Belimicus, gubernātor Cantiacus, nautās suōs vituperābat. 25

Dumnorix, ubi saxō appropinquāvit, nāvem subitō ad dextram vertit. “ecce!” inquit Dumnorix. “periculōsum est nōbīs prope saxum nāvigāre, quod scopulus sub undīs latet. necesse est nōbīs scopulum vitāre.” 30

Belimicus tamen, quī scopulum ignōrābat, cursum rēctum tenēbat.

“comitēs,” clāmāvit, “ecce! nōs vincere possumus, quod Dumnorix ad dextram abiit. hī Rēgnēnsēs sunt timidī; facile est nōbīs vincere, quod nōs sumus fortiōrēs.” 35

nautae Cantiacī Belimicō crēdebant. mox nāvem Rēgnēnsē superāvērunt et priōrēs ad mētā advēnērunt. Belimicus, quī scopulum nōn vīdit, Dumnorigem dērīdebāt. subitō nāvis Cantiaica in scopulum incurrit. nautae perterritī clāmāvērunt; aqua nāvem complēbat. Belimicus et Cantiacī nihil facere poterant; nāvis mox summersa erat. 40

intereā Dumnorix, quī cum summā cūrā nāvigābat, circum mētā nāvem dīrēxit. nāvis ad lītus incolumis pervēnit. multī spectātōrēs Dumnorigem victōrem laudāvērunt. Rēgnēnsēs laetī, Cantiacī miserī erant. tum omnēs ad mare oculōs vertēbant. difficile erat eīs nautās vidēre, quod in undīs natābant. omnēs tamen Belimicum vidēre poterant, quōd in summō saxō sedēbat. madidus ad saxum haerēbat et auxilium postulābat. 45

superbus
 prōsiluērunt; prōsilīrē
 undās: unda
 rēmī: rēmūs
 in litore
 procul
 in mari
 saxum
 mēta
 dirigēbat; dirigēre
 prius
 ā tergō
 ad dextram
 nāvigāre
 scopulus
 sub
 vitāre

dirigant, prout
 dirigant
 undas
 remi
 in litore
 procul
 in mari
 saxum
 meta
 dirigebat
 prius
 a tergo
 ad dextram
 navigare
 scopulus
 sub
 vitare

dirigebat
 prius
 a tergo
 ad dextram
 navigare
 scopulus
 sub
 vitare
 dirigebat
 prius
 a tergo
 ad dextram
 navigare
 scopulus
 sub
 vitare

dirigebat
 prius
 a tergo
 ad dextram
 navigare
 scopulus
 sub
 vitare
 dirigebat
 prius
 a tergo
 ad dextram
 navigare
 scopulus
 sub
 vitare



Mosaic showing an underwater scene with sea-animals.

About the Language

- 1 Study the following pair of sentences:

ancilla urnam portābat.

The slave-girl was carrying the jug.

ancilla, **quae post Salvium ambulābat**, urnam portābat.

*The slave-girl, **who was walking behind Salvius**, was carrying the jug.*

The group of words in boldface is known as a *relative clause*.

- 2 A relative clause is used to describe a noun. For example:

Vārica, **quī cum praecursōribus equitābat**, ad Salvium rediit.

*Varica, **who was riding with the forerunners**, returned to Salvius.*

prope iuvenēs erat plastrum, **quod tōtam viam claudēbat**.

*Near the young men was a wagon, **which was blocking the whole road**.*

In the first example, the relative clause describes Varica; in the second, the relative clause describes the wagon.

- 3 Translate the following examples and pick out the relative clause in each sentence:

1 rēx, quī scēptrum tenēbat, in hortō sedēbat.

2 vīnum, quod Salvius bibēbat, erat optimum.

3 ancillae, quae dominum timēbant, ē villā festīnāvērunt.

4 Bregāns, quem Vārica quaerēbat, in horreō dormiēbat.

5 in viā erant multī Britannī, quī Rōmānōs impediēbant.

6 prope āram erat victima, quam rēx sacrificāvit.

In each example, find the noun which is being described by the relative clause.

Practicing the Language

- 1 Complete each sentence with the right word or words from the list below and then translate. You will have to use some words more than once.

sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt

1 vilicus anxius; nam Salvius īrātus.

- 2 vōs agnum sacrificātis quod vōs sacerdōtēs.
- 3 prīncipēs in aulā ubi rēgem expectant.
- 4 ego dominus; decōrum mihi celeriter prōcēdere.
- 5 nōs nōn ignāvī; in fundō dīlīgenter labōrāmus.
- 6 tū servōs īnspicis quod tū vīlicus.

2 Complete each sentence with the right word and then translate.

- 1 parvus puer ad effigiem dūxit. {Cogidubnum, Cogidubnō}
- 2 ubi sacerdōtēs erant parātī, servī vīnum dedērunt. {rēgem, rēgī}
- 3 Cogidubnus, quī prope effigiem stābat, ēlēgit. {victimam, victimae}
- 4 Dumnorix nāvem ostendit. {amīcōs, amīcīs}
- 5 facile erat Belimicum vidēre, quod ad saxum haerēbat. {spectātōrēs, spectātōribus}
- 6 post certāmen nāvāle, rēx ad aulam invītāvit. {nautās, nautīs}

About the Language

1 In Unit 1, you met the question-word **num?** which is used to suggest that the answer to the question will be *no*. Notice again the different ways of translating it:

num tū servus es?	<i>Surely you're not a slave!</i> <i>You're not a slave, are you?</i>
num fūr effūgit?	<i>Surely the thief didn't escape?</i> <i>The thief didn't escape, did he?</i>

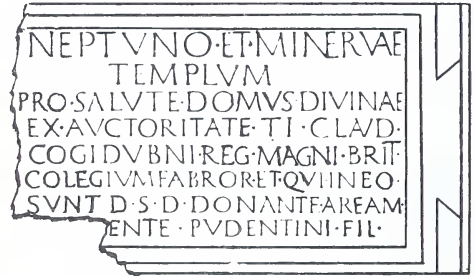
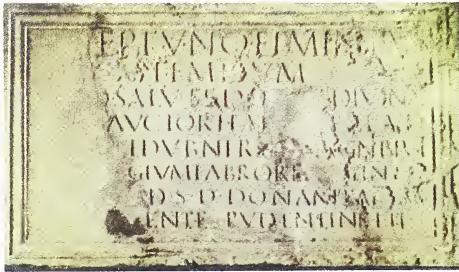
2 From Stage 13 onwards, you have met the question-word **nōnne?** which is used to suggest that the answer will be *yes*. Notice the different ways of translating it:

nōnne vīnum est dōnum optimum?	<i>Surely wine is a very good present!</i> <i>Wine is a very good present, isn't it?</i>
nōnne tū Rōmānus es?	<i>Surely you are a Roman!</i> <i>You are a Roman, aren't you?</i>
nōnne Cogidubnus in aulā habitat?	<i>Surely Cogidubnus lives in a palace!</i> <i>Cogidubnus lives in a palace, doesn't he?</i>

3 Further examples:

- 1 nōne haec pictūra est pulchra?
- 2 num perterritus es?
- 3 num Bregāns labōrat?
- 4 nōne Bregāns in culīnā dormit?
- 5 nōne rēx tibi illum canem dedit?

Cogidubnus, King of the Regnenses



To Neptune and Minerva, for the welfare of the Divine House, by the authority of Tiberius Claudius Cogidubnus, great king of the Britons, the Association of Craftsmen, and those in it gave this temple from their own resources. . . . ens, son of Pudentinus, presented the forecourt.

A slab of stone inscribed with these Latin words was discovered in Chichester not far from the coast of southern Britain, in 1723. When found, the slab was broken, but as soon as the pieces had been fitted together, it was clear that this was the dedication stone of a temple built at the request of Cogidubnus in honor of Neptune, god of the sea, and Minerva, goddess of wisdom and craftsmanship. The elegant lettering, carved in the style of the first century A.D., suggested the work of Roman craftsmen. Roman dedication stones are rather like the foundation stones which are laid nowadays when an important public building, such as a church, library, or school, is being erected. They state the name of the person or group of people who gave the site and paid for the building.

This particular temple was paid for by the local **collēgium** or *association of craftsmen*.

The inscription also helps us to construct the life-story of Cogidubnus himself, although many details remain unknown. He was probably a member of the family that ruled the Atrebatas, a tribe in southern Britain. After the Roman invasion in A.D. 43 the Romans appointed him king of this tribe and the tribe was renamed the Regnenses. Cogidubnus was a faithful supporter of the Romans, and the kingship may have been a reward from the Emperor Claudius for helping them at the time of the invasion.

Cogidubnus was granted the privilege of Roman citizenship and allowed to add the emperor's names to his own. He became a "client king," which meant that he ruled on behalf of the emperor and that he was responsible for collecting taxes and keeping the peace in his part of Britain. In this way he played an important part in keeping the southern region loyal to Rome, while the legions advanced to conquer the tribes in the north.



Aerial view of Chichester (ancient Noviomagus) showing the traditional crossroads pattern of a Roman town.

By dedicating the new temple to Neptune and Minerva rather than British gods, Cogidubnus publicly declared his loyalty to Rome. The temple was a sign and reminder of Roman power. Its priests may well have been selected from the local British chieftains, many of whom were quick to see the advantages of supporting the new government. And when the inscription goes on to say that the temple was intended “for the welfare of the Divine House,” Cogidubnus is suggesting that the emperor himself is related to the gods and should be worshiped. The Romans encouraged the people of their empire to respect and worship the emperor in this way, because it helped to build up a sense of unity in a large empire that contained many tribes, languages and religions.

The Regnenses received not only a new king, but also a new capital town, Noviomagus. It was founded near the south coast, where Chichester now stands. Three miles (five kilometers) to the west is the modern village of Fishbourne, where the remains of a large Roman building were found in 1960 by a workman digging a trench for a new water main. During the eight years of excavation that followed, the archaeologists discovered that this was no ordinary country house. It was a palace as large and splendid as the fashionable houses in Rome itself, with one set of rooms after another, arranged around a huge courtyard. No inscription has been found to reveal the owner’s name, but the palace was so large, so magnificent, and so near to Noviomagus that Cogidubnus seems the likeliest person.

The palace, however, was not the first building erected on the site. Underneath it the remains of earlier wooden buildings were found, and these go back to the time of the Roman invasion or very shortly afterwards. One of them was a granary. Pieces of metal and a helmet were also found nearby. These discoveries indicate the presence of soldiers; they may have been soldiers of the Second Legion, commanded by Vespasian, a brilliant young general who led the attack against the Durotriges in the southwest. There was a harbor nearby, where Roman supply ships tied up. It is therefore likely that the Romans first used Fishbourne as a military port and depot where Vespasian assembled his troops.

In A.D. 69, Vespasian himself became emperor. A few years later, work began on the building of the Fishbourne palace. Perhaps Vespasian was remembering the loyalty of Cogidubnus and was now presenting him with the palace in return for his long-standing support of the Romans.

Words and Phrases Checklist

agmen	<i>column (of people), procession</i>
alius	<i>other, another</i>
aqua	<i>water</i>
claudō, claudere, clausī	<i>shut, block</i>
commodus	<i>convenient</i>
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui	<i>owe, ought</i>
effigiēs: effigiem	<i>image, statue</i>
equus	<i>horse</i>
etiam	<i>even</i>
fossa	<i>ditch</i>
fractus	<i>broken</i>
honōrō, honōrāre, honōrāvī	<i>honor</i>
impediō, impedire, impedivī	<i>delay, hinder</i>
lectus	<i>couch</i>
lentē	<i>slowly</i>
lītus	<i>seashore</i>
miser	<i>miserable, wretched</i>
nauta	<i>sailor</i>
plaustrum	<i>wagon, cart</i>
praesum, praesse, praefui	<i>be in charge of</i>
prīnceps: prīncipem	<i>chief, chieftain</i>
prior	<i>first, in front</i>
quī	<i>who</i>
redeō, redire, rediī	<i>return, go back</i>
sacerdōs: sacerdotem	<i>priest</i>
saxum	<i>rock</i>
tencō, tenere, tenuī	<i>hold (also in other contexts: own)</i>
unda	<i>wave</i>
victor: victorem	<i>winner</i>
vincō, vincere, vici	<i>win</i>

Word Search

alien, debt, equine, fracture, impede, principal, undulate

- 1 : foreign, strange, or unfamiliar
- 2 : to obstruct
- 3 : most important, first
- 4 : something owed; an obligation
- 5 : to billow
- 6 : a break
- 7 : pertaining to horses



Reconstruction of a Roman dinner table with fruit, shellfish, wine, and nuts.

Stage 16



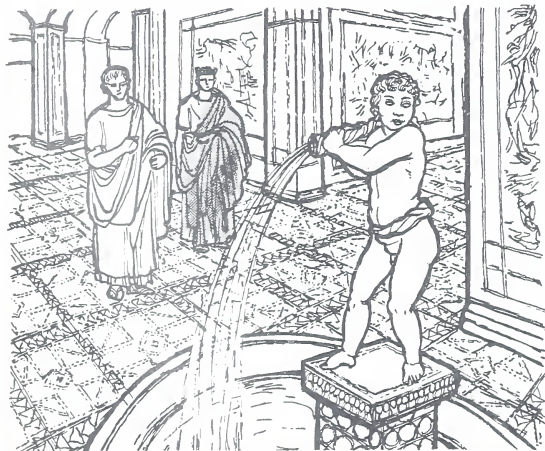
in aulā



Cogidubnus Quīntum per
aulam dūcēbat. in aulā
erant multae pictūrae,
quās pictor Graecus
pīnixerat.



rēx iuvenem in hortum
dūxit. in hortō erant
multī flōrēs, quōs
Cogidubnus ex Ītaliā
importāverat.



tum ad ātrium vēnērunt.
in mediō ātriō erat fōns
marmoreus, quī aquam
effundēbat.



rēx et hospitēs in aulā
cēnābant. cēna, quam
coquī Graeci parāverant,
optima erat. servī
magnum ōvum in mēsam
posuērunt.



ex ōvō, quod servī in
mēsam posuerant,
appāruit saltātrīx.



tum pūmiliōnēs, quōs rēx
in Ītaliā ēmerat,
intrāvērunt. pūmiliōnēs
pīlās iactābant.

Belimicus ultor

Belimicus, prīnceps Cantiacus, postquam Dumnorix in certāmine nāvālī vīcit, rem graviter ferēbat. irātissimus erat. omnēs hospitēs, quōs rēx ad aulam invītāverat, eum dērīdēbant. Cantiacī quoque eum dērīdēbant et vituperābant. etiā servī, quī dē naufragiō cognōverant, clam rīdēbant.

5

“iste Dumnorix mē dēcēpit,” Belimicus sibi dīxit. “mē in scopulum impulit et praemium iniūstē cēpit. decōrum est mihi eum pūnīre.”

Belimicus sēcum cōgitāvit et cōsiliū callidū cēpit. erant in aulā multae bēstiae, quās rēx ē multīs terrīs importāverat. inter hās bēstiās erat ursa ingēns, quam servus Germānicus custōdiēbat. Belimicus ad hunc servum adiit.

10

“hoc animal est magnificū,” inquit. “mē valdē dēlectat. ursam tractāre volō; eam nōn timeō.”

itaque prīnceps ad ursam cotīdiē veniēbat; ursae cibum et aquam dabat. paulātīm ursam mānsuētā fēcīt. tandem sōlus ursam tractāre potuit.

15

mox Cogidubnus cēnam et spectāculū nūntiāvit. amīcōs ad aulam invītāvit. Belimicus statim ad servum Germānicū contendit, et eī dīxit,

20

“rēx hodiē spectāculū dat; hodiē hanc ursam in aulam dūcere volō. nunc eam tractāre possum. hospitibus eam ostendere volō.”

servus invītus cōnsēnsit. Belimicus cachinnāns sibi dīxit,

“parātus sum. nunc Dumnorigem pūnīre possum.”

ultor	<i>avenger</i>	iniūstē	<i>unfairly</i>
graviter ferēbat	<i>took badly</i>	sēcum	<i>to himself</i>
dē naufragiō	<i>about the shipwreck</i>	ursa	<i>bear</i>
cognōverant: cognōscere	<i>find out, get to know</i>	adiit: adire	<i>approach, go up to</i>
clam	<i>secretly, in private</i>	tractāre	<i>handle</i>
impulit: impellere	<i>push, force</i>	paulātīm	<i>gradually</i>
praemium	<i>prize</i>	mānsuētā	<i>tame</i>

Germānicus *German*

Opposite: Mosaic border from Fishbourne showing a bird, which probably served as the mosaicist's signature, or “trademark.”



Reconstruction of a mosaic from Woodchester (in the west of England), depicting Orpheus taming the wild animals.



rēx spectāculum dat



rēx cum multīs hospitibus in aulā cēnābat. Salvius et Quīntus prope rēgem recumbēbant. Britannī cibum laudābant, Rōmānī vīnum. omnēs hospitēs rēgī grātiās agēbant.

subitō Belimicus tardus intrāvit.

“ecce! naufragus noster intrat,” clāmāvit Dumnorix. “num tū 5
aliam nāvem āmīsistī?”

cēterī Belimicum dērīsērunt et Dumnorigī plausērunt. Belimicus tamen Dumnorigī nihil respondit, sed tacitus cōnsēdit.

rēx hospitibus suīs spectāculum nūntiāvit. statim pūmiliōnēs cum saltātrīcibus intrāvērunt et hospitēs dēlectāvērunt. deinde, ubi 10
rēx eīs signum dedit, omnēs exiērunt. Salvius, quem pūmiliōnēs nōn dēlectāverant, clāmāvit,

“haec cēna est bona. numquam cēnam meliōrem cōsūmpsī. sed ursam, quae saltat, vidēre volō. illa ursā mē multō magis dēlectat quam pūmiliōnēs et saltātrīcēs.” 15

rēx servīs signum dedit. servus Germānicus, quī hoc signum expectābat, statim cum ursā intrāvit et hospitibus eam ostendit.

Belimicus, simulatque hoc vīdit, surrēxit, et ad medium triclinium prōcessit.

“mī Dumnorix!” clāmāvit. “facile est tibi iocōs facere. sed ursam tractāre nōn audēs! ego nōn timeō. ego, quem tū dērīdēs, ursam tractāre audeō.” 20

omnēs Belimicum spectābant attonitī. Belimicus, quī servum iam dīmīserat, ursam ad Dumnorigem dūxit.

“nōnne tū quoque ursam tractāre vīs?” rogāvit insolēns, “nōnne tū hospitibus spectāculum dare vīs?” 25

Dumnorix impavidus statim surrēxit et Belimicum dērīsīt,

“facile est mihi hanc ursam superāre. tē quoque, homuncule, superāre possum.” 30

tum cēterī, quī antea timuerant, valdē cachinnāvērunt. Belimicus, ubi cachinnōs audīvit, furēns ursam pulsāvit, et eam ad Dumnorigem impulit. subitō ursā saeva sē vertit, et Belimicum ferōciter percussit. tum prīncipēs perterritī clāmōrem magnum sustulērunt et ad iānuās quam celerrimē cucurrērunt. etiam inter sē pugnābant, quod exīre nōn poterant. ursā, quam hic clāmor terruerat, ad lectum cucurrit, ubi rēx sedēbat. 35

rēx tamen, quod claudicābat, effugere nōn poterat. Dumnorix in ursam frūstrā sē coniēcit. Salvius immōtus stābat. sed Quīntus hastam, quam servus Germānicus tenēbat, rapuit. hastam celeriter ēmīsit et bēstiam saevam trānsfīxit. illa dēcidit mortua.

40

tardus	late
naufragus	shipwrecked sailor
tacitus	silent, in silence
cōnsēdit: cōsidere	sit down
pūmiliōnēs: pūmiliō	dwarf
cum saltātrīcibus	with dancing-girls
saltat: saltāre	dance
multō magis	much more
iocōs: iocus	joke
audēs: audēre	dare
homuncule: homunculus	little man
cachinnāvērunt: cachinnāre	roar with laughter
cachinnōs: cachinnus	laughter
furēns	furious, in a rage
saeva	savage
sē vertit: sē vertere	turn around
coniēcit: conicere	hurl, throw
immōtus	still, motionless
hastam: hasta	spear



Small bronze figure of a bear.

The father and the mother survived.

When you have read this story, answer the questions at the end.

Quīntus dē sē

postrīdiē Quīntus per hortum cum rēge ambulābat, flōresque variōs spectābat. deinde rēx eum rogāvit,

“quō modō ex urbe Pompēiīs effūgistī? / paterne et māter superfuērunt?”

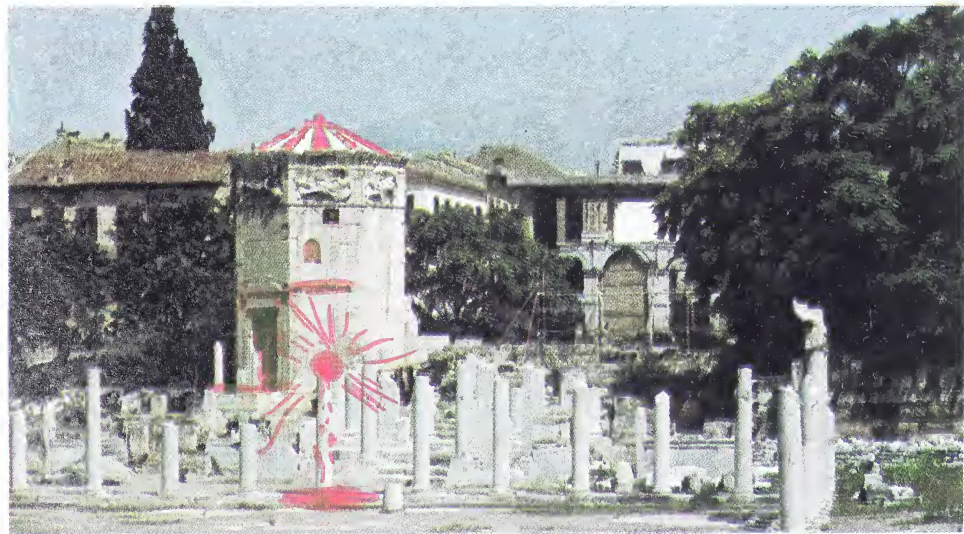
“periit pater,” inquit Quīntus trīstis. “māter quoque in urbe periit. ego et ūnus servus superfuimus. ad urbem Neāpolim vix effūgimus. ibi servum, quī tam fortis et tam fidēlis fuerat, liberāvī.”

“quid deinde fēcistī?” inquit rēx. “pecūniam habēbās?”

“omnēs villās, quās pater in Campāniā possēderat, vēdidī. ita multam pecūniam comparāvī. tum ex Italiā discēdere volūi, quod trīstissimus eram. ego igitur et libertus meus nāvem cōnscendimus.

prīmō ad Graeciam vēnimus et in urbe Athēnīs paulisper habitābāmus. haec urbs erat pulcherrima, sed cīvēs turbulentī. multī philosophī, quī forum cotīdiē frequentābant, contrōversiās inter sē habēbant.

post paucōs mēnsēs, aliās urbēs vidēre voluimus. ad Aegyptum igitur nāvīgāvimus, et mox ad urbem Alexandriām advēnimus.”



Roman marketplace in Athens, with the Tower of the Winds (depicting in relief the eight winds).

variōs: varius	<i>different</i>	comparāvī: comparāre	<i>obtain</i>
quō modō	<i>how</i>	cōnscondimus: cōnscondere	<i>embark on,</i>
superfuērunt: superesse	<i>survive</i>		<i>go on board</i>
vix	<i>with difficulty</i>	prīmō	<i>first</i>
tam	<i>so</i>	frequentābant: frequentāre	<i>crowd, fill</i>
fuerat	<i>had been</i>	mēnsēs: mēnsis	<i>month</i>
possēderat: possidēre	<i>possess</i>		

Neāpolim: Neāpolis	<i>Naples</i>
Campāniā: Campānia	<i>district on west coast of central Italy, surrounding Pompeii</i>
Athēnīs: Athēnae	<i>Athens</i>
Aegyptum: Aegyptus	<i>Egypt</i>
Alexandriām: Alexandriā	<i>Alexandria, a major port-city of Egypt and a commercial center of the Roman empire</i>

- 1 Where did the king have this conversation with Quintus?
- 2 Who escaped with Quintus to Naples?
- 3 How did Quintus raise money after the eruption of Vesuvius?
- 4 Why did he want to leave Italy?
- 5 Where did he go first? What did he see in the forum there?
- 6 Where did he go next? How did he travel? Was the journey long or short?

Countdown

About the Language

- 1 In this Stage, you have met examples of the *pluperfect* tense. They looked like this:

in aulā erat ursā ingēns, quam rēx in Ītaliā **ēmerat**.

In the palace was a huge bear, which the king had bought in Italy.

hospitēs, quī ad caerimōniam **vēnerant**, plausērunt.

The guests who had come to the ceremony applauded.

- 2 The complete pluperfect tense is as follows:

portāveram	<i>I had carried</i>
portāverās	<i>you (singular) had carried</i>
portāverat	<i>s/he had carried</i>
portāverāmus	<i>we had carried</i>
portāverātis	<i>you (plural) had carried</i>
portāverant	<i>they had carried</i>

3 Further examples:

- 1 Rūfilla ancillās, quae cubiculum parāverant, laudāvit.
- 2 in ātriō sedēbant hospitēs, quōs rēx ad aulam invītāverat.
- 3 nōs fessī erāmus, quod per tōtum diem labōrāverāmus.
- 4 Belimicus, quī nāvem amiserat, irātissimus erat.
- 5 Salvius mē pūnīvit, quod ē villā fūgeram.

4 Study the differences between the present, perfect, and pluperfect tenses:

PRESENT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
portat <i>s/he carries</i>	portāvit <i>s/he carried</i>	portāverat <i>s/he had carried</i>
audiunt <i>they hear</i>	audīvērunt <i>they heard</i>	audīverant <i>they had heard</i>
dīcit scrībīt ambulant docent	dīxit scrīpsit ambulāvērunt docuērunt	dīxerat scrīpserat ambulāverant docuerant

Practicing the Language

1 Complete each sentence with the right word from those given below, and then translate. You will have to use some words more than once.

NOMINATIVE	Rōmānī	Britannī
DATIVE	Rōmānīs	Britannīs

- 1 Rōmānī et Britannī ad aulam vēnerant. Cogidubnus Rōmānīs et cēnam splendidam dabat.
- 2 rēx Rōmānīs favēbat. multī prope rēgem sedēbant. rēx vīnum optimum obtulit.
- 3 rēx nōn favēbat. Cogidubnus Britannīs vīnum pessimum obtulit.
- 4 multī erant irātī. mox Britannī et inter sē pugnābant.

obtulit: offerre *offer*

Cogidubnus et Vespasiānus

Cogidubnus Quīntō dē vitā suā nārrābat:

“ubi Rōmānī in Britanniam invāsērunt, Claudius legiōnem
secundam contrā Durotrigēs mīsīt. Vespasiānus, quī hanc legiōnem
dūcēbat, ad mē vēnit et auxilium rogāvit. ego Vespasiānō auxilium
dedī. Rōmānīs frūmentum comparāvī. Rōmānīs explōrātōrēs dedī. 5
hī explōrātōrēs Rōmānōs celeriter dūxērunt ad regiōnem, ubi
Durotrigēs habitābant. Durotrigēs diū resistēbant sed Rōmānī
tandem victōrēs erant. Vespasiānus ad mē ita scrīpsit:

‘Durotrigēs fortiter pugnāvērunt, sed nōs eōs tandem
superāvimus. multōs Durotrigēs necāvimus; multās fēminās 10
libērōsque cēpimus; multōs vīcōs incendimus. nōs Rōmānī fortiōrēs
erāmus quam barbarī. facile erat nōbīs eōs superāre.’

post multōs annōs Rōmānī Vespasiānum imperātōrem fēcērunt.
Vespasiānus, quī mihi amīcus fidēlissimus erat, mē honōrāvit. hanc
epistulam ad mē mīsīt: 15

‘tē honōrāre volō, quod mihi auxilium ōlim dedistī. decōrum est
tibi in aulā habitāre. architectum igitur ex Graeciā arcessīvī, et
fabrōs Ītalīcōs comparāvī. eōs ad tē mīsī.’

architectus et fabrī, quōs Vespasiānus mīsīt, callidissimī erant.
dīlīgenter labōrāvērunt et hanc aulam aedificāvērunt. ita 20
Vespasiānus mihi benignitātem summam ostendit.”

invāsērunt: invādere	<i>invade</i>
legiōnem: legiō	<i>legion</i>
contrā	<i>against</i>
explōrātōrēs: explōrātor	<i>scout, spy</i>
regiōnem: regiō	<i>region</i>
cēpimus: capere	<i>take, capture</i>
vīcōs: vīcus	<i>village</i>
incendimus: incendere	<i>burn, set fire to</i>
annōs: annus	<i>year</i>
benignitātem: benignitās	<i>kindness</i>

Vespasiānus	<i>Roman general in British campaigns, A.D. 43; later emperor (A.D. 69–79)</i>
Durotrigēs	<i>name of a tribe in <u>southwestern Britain</u></i>
Ītalīcōs : Ītalicus	<i>Italian</i>

About the Language

- 1 In Stage 13, you met several sentences containing the *infinitive* of the verb. For example:

Salvius fundum **īnspicere** vult. *Salvius wants to inspect the farm.*
geminī **labōrāre** nōn possunt. *The twins aren't able to work.*
or *The twins can't work.*

- 2 You have now met several other examples of sentences containing infinitives:

facile est nōbīs effigiem **portāre**. *It is easy for us to carry the image.*
commodum est mihi hīc **manēre**. *It is convenient for me to remain here.*
ad aulam **revenīre** dēbeō. *I ought to return to the palace.*
or *I must return to the palace.*

- 3 Further examples:

- 1 difficile est Cogidubnō festīnāre, quod senex est.
- 2 spectāculum vidēre nolumus.
- 3 necesse est nōbīs fugere.
- 4 pecūniam reddere dēbēs.
- 5 Salvius est dominus; decōrum est Salviō servōs pūnīre.
- 6 periculōsum est tibi in aulā manēre.
- 7 victimam sacrificāre vīs?
- 8 vōs pugnāre nōn audētis!

Red

The Palace at Fishbourne

When the Roman soldiers moved on from Fishbourne, they left behind them a few buildings, some roads, and a harbor. During the next thirty years many improvements were made. The roads were resurfaced, the drainage improved (it was a low-lying, rather marshy site) and the harbor developed. Merchant ships arrived regularly. A guest house was begun and a fine new villa with a set of baths was built in the late sixties. This could have been a residence built by Cogidubnus for himself on the outskirts of his new capital town.

But in about A.D. 75 everything changed. A vast area was cleared and leveled, and the villa and baths became part of the southeast corner of a huge new building. It was laid out in four long wings around a central garden. The entrance hall was situated in the middle of the east wing, and in the center of the west wing stood the audience chamber where the king received his subjects and interviewed officials.

Specialist craftsmen were brought in from Italy: makers of mosaics, marble-workers, plasterers to make stucco friezes, painters, carpenters, iron-smiths, hydraulic engineers to construct the fountains, and many others. Most of the floors were covered with mosaics, mainly geometric patterns in black and white (see the example on page 61). The walls were painted, like the walls of houses in Pompeii, with richly colored garden scenes and architectural designs. Some walls were even lined with marble. Many traces of the activity of the craftsmen have been found. The floor of the area used by the stonemasons was littered with fragments of marble and colored stone which had been imported from quarries in Italy, the Greek island of Scyros, Asia Minor, and elsewhere. In another area were signs of iron-working where the smiths had manufactured door-hinges, handles, and bolts. The craftsmen and the materials were brought in from outside, but all the construction and detailed manufacture was carried out on the site itself, where the builders lived and worked for many years.

The open area, which measured approximately 100 by 80 yards (90 by 70 meters), was laid out as a garden. A broad path, 40 feet (12 meters)



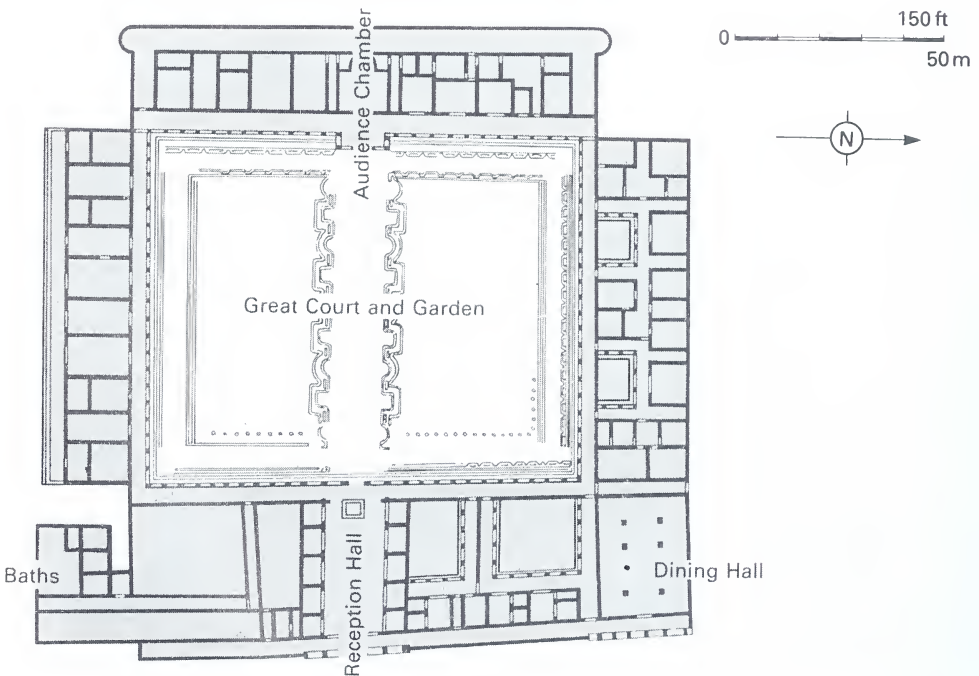
A model of the palace at Fishbourne as it was in A.D. 75.

wide and surfaced probably with gravel ran through the middle of it, leading from the reception hall to the audience chamber. On either side of the path were lawns, not rolled and mown like a modern lawn, but nevertheless with the grass kept short and neat. Paths ran around the outside of the lawns, and along the edges of the paths were beds for shrubs and flowers. The gardeners cut deep bedding trenches in the soil, and filled them with a mixture of loam and crushed chalk.

A line of holes across the eastern side of the garden showed where wooden poles stood to support a trellis for climbing plants. These may have been rambler roses: the Romans were fond of roses and good at growing them. The writer Pliny the Elder advised his readers to manure rosebushes with kitchen garbage and to see that the roots were embedded in it.

A system of underground pipes brought water to the fountains which stood at intervals along the paths. Small marble and bronze statues were placed here and there to provide further decoration.

So the garden, like the palace, was planned, laid out and decorated in the most fashionable Italian style. Whether the owner was Cogidubnus or somebody else, he wished his palace in Britain to be as Roman as possible.



Ground plan of the palace at Fishbourne.

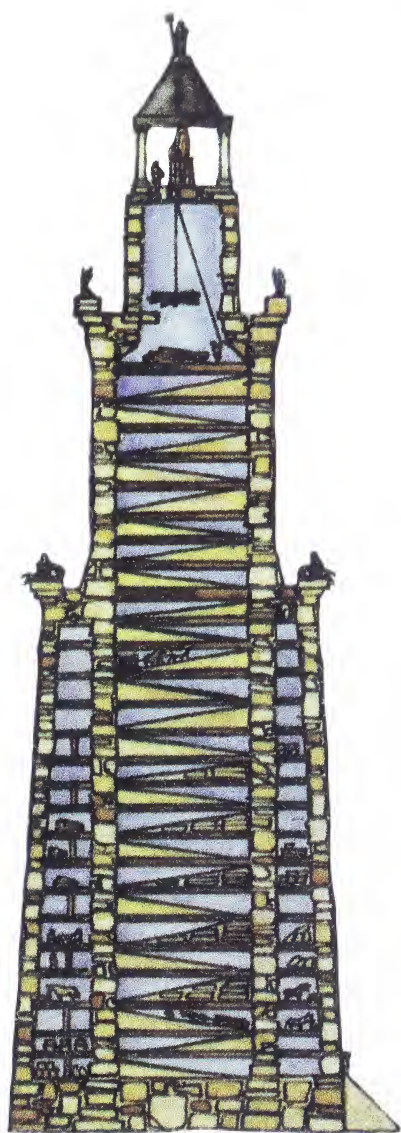
Words and Phrases Checklist

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī	<i>build</i>
auxilium	<i>help</i>
bonus	<i>good</i>
consentiō, cōsentīre, cōsensī	<i>agree</i>
cōsiliū	<i>plan, idea</i>
deinde	<i>then</i>
dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī	<i>delight</i>
dērideō, dēridēre, dērīsī	<i>mock, make fun of</i>
dimitto, dīmittere, dīmīsī	<i>send away, dismiss</i>
effugiō, effugere, effūgi	<i>escape</i>
faber	<i>craftsman</i>
flōs; flōrem	<i>flower</i>
frūmentum	<i>grain</i>
imperātor; imperātōrem	<i>emperor</i>
inter	<i>among</i>
ita	<i>in this way</i>
melior	<i>better</i>
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī	<i>sail</i>
nōnne?	<i>surely?</i>
parātus	<i>ready, prepared</i>
pereō, perīre, perīī	<i>die, perish</i>
pōnō, pōnere, posuī	<i>place, put</i>
postriḋie	<i>(on) the next day</i>
pūniō, pūnīre, punīvī	<i>punish</i>
saltō, saltāre, saltāvī	<i>dance</i>
simulac, simulatque	<i>as soon as</i>
summus	<i>highest, greatest, top</i>
supersum, superesse, superfuī	<i>survive</i>
tollō, tollere, sustulī	<i>raise, lift up</i>
vertō, vertere, vertī	<i>turn</i>

Word Search

ameliorate, auxiliary, consensus, delectable, deride, impunity, summit

- 1 : highest point
- 2 : exemption from penalty
- 3 : collective opinion, general agreement
- 4 : to ridicule, scoff at
- 5 : enjoyable, pleasing
- 6 : supporting; additional
- 7 : to improve, make better



One possible reconstruction of the Pharos lighthouse at Alexandria. This cross section shows the spiral pathway by which animals were led up and down, carrying fuel for the fire at the top. A different reconstruction can be seen in the illustration opposite. The coin pictured on p. 133 shows an ancient depiction of the Pharos.

Stage 17



Alexandrīa

Quīntus dē Alexandriā



Alexandriā magnum portum habet. prope portum est īnsula. facile est nāvibus ad portum pervenīre, quod in hāc īnsulā est pharus ingēns. multae nāvēs in portū Alexandriāe stāre possunt.

īnsula *island*

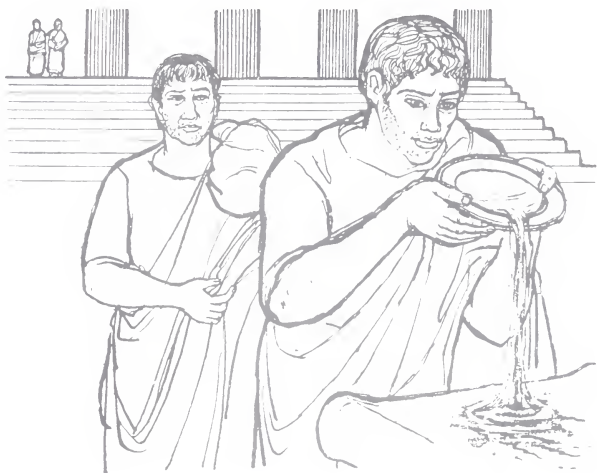
pharus *lighthouse*

stāre *lie at anchor*



Alexandriā est urbs turbulenta. ingēns turba semper urbem complet. multū mercātōrēs per viās ambulant. multī servī per urbem currunt. multī mīlitēs per viās urbis incēdunt. mīlitēs Rōmānī urbem custōdiunt.

incēdunt: incēdere *march*



ego et Clēmēns, postquam ad urbem pervēnimus, templum vīdimus. ad hoc templum, quod Augustus Caesar aedificāverat, festināvimus. prō templō Caesaris erat āra. ego vīnum in āram fūdī.

prō templō *in front of the temple*
fūdī: fundere *pour*

Augustus Caesar *first Roman emperor,*
27 B.C.-A.D. 14



prope hanc urbem habitābat Barbillus, vir dīves. Barbillus negōtium cum patre meō saepe agēbat. villam splendidam habēbat. ad villam Barbillī mox pervēnī. facile erat mihi villam invenīre, quod Barbillus erat vir nōtissimus.



Barbillus multōs servōs habēbat, ego nūllōs. “decōrum est tibi servum Aegyptium habēre,” inquit Barbillus. inter servōs Barbillī erat puer Aegyptius. Barbillus, vir benignus, mihi hunc puerum dedit.

Wall painting of a harbor scene.

When you have read this story, answer the questions at the end.

tumultus

in villā Barbillī diū habitābam. ad urbem cum servō quondam contendī, quod Clēmementem vīsītāre volēbam. ille tabernam prope portum Alexandriāe tenēbat. servus, quī mē dūcēbat, erat puer Aegyptius.

in urbe erat ingēns multitudō, quae viās complēbat. mercātōrēs 5

tumultus *riot*
quondam *one day, once*

ille *he*
tenēbat: tenēre *own*



per viās ambulābant et negōtium inter sē agēbant. fēminae et ancillae tabernās frequentābant; tabernāriū fēminīs et ancillīs stolās ostendēbant. plūrimī servī per viās urbis currēbant. difficile erat nōbīs per viās ambulāre, quod maxima erat multitudō. tandem ad portum Alexandriāe pervēnimus, sed ibi nūllōs Graecōs vidēre poterāmus. puer, postquam hoc sēnsit, anxius dīxit,

“melius est nōbīs ad villam Barbillī revenīre. ad tabernam Clēmētis īre nōn possumus. viae sunt periculōsae, quod Aegyptiū īrātī sunt. omnēs Graecī ex hāc parte urbis fūgērunt.”

“minimē!” puerō respondī. “quamquam Aegyptiū sunt īrātī, ad villam redīre nōlō. longum iter iam fēcimus. paene ad tabernam Clēmētis pervēnimus. necesse est nōbīs cautē prōcēdere.”

itaque ad tabernam Clēmētis contendimus, sed in triviīs magna multitudō nōbīs obstābat. ego anxius hanc multitudinem spectāvī. in multitudīne Aegyptiōrum erat senex, quī Graecōs Rōmānōsque vituperābat. omnēs eum intentī audiēbant.

ubi hoc vīdī, sollicitus eram. puer Aegyptius, quī sollicitūdinem meam sēnserat, mē ad casam proximam dūxit.

“domine, in hāc casā habitat faber, quī Barbillum bene nōvit. necesse est nōbīs casam intrāre et periculum vītāre.”

faber per fenestram casae forte spectābat. ubi puerum agnōvit, nōs in casam suam libenter accēpit.

postquam casam intrāvimus, susurrāvī,

“quis est hic faber?”

“est Diogenēs, faber Graecus,” respondit puer.

ubi hoc audīvī, magis timēbam, nam in casā virī Graecī eram; extrā iānuam casae Aegyptiū Graecōs vituperābant. subitō servus clāmāvit,

“ēheu! Aegyptiū infestī casam oppugnant.”

Diogenēs statim ad armārium contendit. in armāriō erant quīnque fūstēs, quōs Diogenēs extrāxit et nōbīs trādīdit.

Aegyptiū iānuam effrēgērunt et in casam irrūpērunt. nōs Aegyptiīs fortiter resistēbāmus, sed illī erant multī, nōs paucī. septem Aegyptiū mē circumveniēbant. duōs graviter vulnerāvī, sed cēterī mē superāvērunt. prōcubuī exanimātus. ubi animum recēpī, casam circumspectāvī. fenestrae erant frāctae, casa dīrepta. Diogenēs in mediā casā stābat lacrimāns. prope mē iacēbat puer meus.

“puer mortuus est,” inquit Diogenēs. “Aegyptiū eum necāvērunt, quod ille tē dēfendēbat.”

tabernārii: tabernārius	<i>storekeeper</i>
plūrimī	<i>very many</i>
sēnsit: sentīre	<i>notice</i>
melius est	<i>it would be better</i>
parte: pars	<i>part</i>
in triviis	<i>at the crossroads</i>
nōbis obstābat	<i>blocked our way, obstructed us</i>
sollicitūdinem: sollicitūdō	<i>anxiety</i>
casam: casa	<i>small house</i>
nōvit	<i>knows</i>
perīculum	<i>danger</i>
fenestram: fenestra	<i>window</i>
forte	<i>by chance</i>
accēpit: accipere	<i>take in, receive</i>
extrā iānuam	<i>outside the door</i>
īnfestī: īnfestus	<i>hostile</i>
oppugnant: oppugnāre	<i>attack</i>
effrēgērunt: effringere	<i>break down</i>
irrupērunt: irrumpere	<i>burst in</i>
septem	<i>seven</i>
circumveniēbant:	
circumvenīre	<i>surround</i>
animum recēpī:	
animum recīpere	<i>recover consciousness</i>
direpta	<i>torn apart, ransacked</i>
dēfendēbat: dēfendere	<i>defend</i>

- 1 Why did Quintus visit the city? Who went with him?
- 2 Why did the slave-boy suggest turning back? Why did Quintus not agree?
- 3 What was happening at the crossroads?
- 4 When the craftsman looked out of the house, how did he guess that Quintus was a friend of Barbillus?
- 5 Why was Quintus frightened when the boy told him who the craftsman was?
- 6 What weapons did Diogenes have ready?
- 7 How did the Egyptians get into the house?
- 8 Who was killed? Why did the Egyptians kill him? Why do you think they did not kill anyone else?

ad templum



per viās urbis quondam cum Barbillō ībam. in multītūdine, quae viās complēbat, Aegyptiōs, Graecōs, Iūdaeōs, Syrōs vīdī. subitō vir quīdam nōbīs appropinquāvit. Barbillus, simulatque eum cōnspexit, magnum gemitum dedit.

“ēheu!” inquit. “quam miserī sumus! ecce Plancus, vir doctissimus, quī numquam tacet! semper dē monumentīs et dē portū Alexandriāe garrīre vult.” 5

“salvē, mī dulcissime!” inquit Plancus. “quid hodiē agis? quō contendis?”

“ad templum,” respondit Barbillus invītus. 10

“ad templum Augustī?” rogāvit ille.

“minimē, ad templum Serāpidis īmus,” inquit Barbillus. “nunc festīnāre dēbēmus, quod iter longum est. nōnne tū negōtium cum aliīs mercātōribus agere dēbēs? valē!”

ille tamen Barbillō respondit, “hodiē ōtiōsus sum. commodum est mihi ad templum Serāpidis īre. dē Serāpide vōbīs nārrāre possum.” 15

Plancus nōbīs ībat garrīens. nōbīs dē omnibus monumentis nārrāre coēpit. Barbillus, quī iam rem graviter ferēbat, in aurem meam susurrāvit,

“comes noster loquāciōr est quam psittacus et obstinātiōr quam asinus.” 20

dēnique, ubi nōs miserī ad templum advēnimus, Plancus statim dē Serāpide garrīre coepit,

“spectāte templum! quam magnificum! spectāte cellam! statuam vīdistis, quae in cellā est? deus ibi cum magnā dignitāte sedet. in capite deī est canistrum. Serāpis enim est deus quī segetēs cūrat. opportunē hūc vēnimus. hōra quārta est. nunc sacerdōtēs in ārā sacrificium facere solent.” 25

subitō tuba sonuit. sacerdōtēs ē cellā templī ad āram prōcessērunt. sacerdōs clāmāvit, 30

“tacēte vōs omnēs, quī adestis! tacēte vōs, quī hoc sacrificium vidēre vultis!”

omnēs virī fēminaeque statim tacuērunt. Barbillus, ubi hoc sēnsit, rīsīt et mihi susurrāvit,

“ehem! vidēsne Plancum? ubi sacerdōs silentium poposcit, etiam ille dēnique tacuit. mīrāculum est. deus nōs servāvit.” 35

vir quidam
 gemitum: gemitus
 doctissimus: doctus
 monumentis: monumentum
 mi dulcissime!
 quid . . . agis?
 garriens
 coepit
 aurem: auris
 loquacior: loquax
 psittacus
 obstinacior: obstinatus
 denique
 cellam: cella
 in capite
 canistrum
 enim
 hora
 quarta
 facere solent
 ehem!
 silentium
 miraculum

Iudaeos: Iudaei
 Syros: Syri
 Serapidis: Serapis

one man, a certain man
 groan
 educated, learned
 monument
 my good man!
 how are you?
 chattering
 began
 ear
 talkative
 parrot
 obstinate
 at last, finally
 sanctuary
 on the head
 basket
 for
 hour
 fourth
 are accustomed to make
 well, well!
 silence
 miracle

Jews
 Syrians
 the god Serapis



Serapis
 Egyptian deity associated with
 fertility and healing.



Sphinx and so-called Pompey's Pillar,
 which was part of the Temple of Serapis in
 Alexandria.

About the Language

1 Study the following sentences:

ad portum **Alexandriāe** mox pervēnimus.

We soon arrived at the harbor of Alexandria.

in villā **Barbilli** erant multī servī.

In the house of Barbillus were many slaves.

mīlitēs Rōmānī per viās **urbis** incēdēbant.

Roman soldiers were marching through the streets of the city.

in multitūdine **Aegyptiōrum** erat senex.

In the crowd of Egyptians was an old man.

The words in boldface are in the *genitive* case.

2 Compare the nominative singular with the genitive singular and genitive plural in each declension:

	NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE PLURAL
FIRST DECLENSION	puella	puellae	puellārum
SECOND DECLENSION	servus	servī	servōrum
THIRD DECLENSION	leō	leōnis	leōnum

3 Further examples:

- 1 multī servī in viā clāmābant. Quīntus per multitūdinem servōrum contendit.
- 2 omnēs sacerdōtēs prō templō Augustī stābant.
- 3 agricola magnum fundum habēbat. Barbillus ad fundum agricolae saepe ambulābat.
- 4 nullī Graecī in illā parte urbis habitābant.
- 5 multae ancillae viās complēbant. puer Quīntum per turbam ancillārum dūxit.
- 6 mercātor togās in tabernā vēndēbat. iuvenēs et puerī ad tabernam mercātōris contendērunt.

mercātor Arabs

ego cum Barbillō cēnāre solēbam. Barbillus mihi gemmās suās quondam ostendit. gemmās attonitus spectāvī, quod maximae et splendidae erant. Barbillus hās gemmās ā mercātōre Arabī ēmerat. dē hōc mercātōre fābulam mīrābilem nārrāvit.

mercātor ōlim cum merce pretiōsā Arabiam trānsībat. in merce 5
erant stolae sēricae, dentēsque eburneī. multōs servōs quoque habēbat, quī mercem custōdiēbant. subitō latrōnēs, quī īnsidiās parāverant, impetum fēcērunt. mercātor servīque latrōnibus ācrit̄er resistēbant, sed latrōnēs tandem servōs superāvērunt. tum latrōnēs 10
cum servīs et cum merce mercātōris effūgērunt. mercātōrem exanimātum relīquērunt.

ille tamen nōn erat mortuus. mox animum recēpit. sōlus erat in dēsertīs, sine aquā, sine servīs. dē vitā suā paene dēspērābat. subitō mōnstrum terribile in caelō appāruit; ālae longiōrēs erant quam 15
rēmī, unguēs maiōrēs quam hastae. in capite mōnstrī erant oculī, quī flammās ēmittēbant. mōnstrum mercātōrem rēctā petīvit. mercātor, postquam hoc mōnstrum dēscendēns vīdit, ad terram exanimātus prōcubuit. ubi animum recēpit, anxius circumspectāvit. iterum dē vitā dēspērābat, quod iam in nīdō 20
ingentī iacēbat. nīdus in monte praeruptō haerēbat. in nīdō mōnstrī erat cumulus. in hōc cumulō mercātor multōs lapidēs fulgentēs cōspexit.

“nunc rem intellegere possum,” mercātor sibi dīxit. “hoc

gemmās: gemma	<i>jewel, gem</i>	mōnstrum	<i>monster</i>
merce: merx	<i>goods, merchandise</i>	ālae: āla	<i>wing</i>
trānsībat: trānsīre	<i>cross</i>	unguēs: unguis	<i>claw</i>
sēricae	<i>silk</i>	rēctā	<i>directly, straight</i>
dentēs . . . eburneī	<i>ivory tusks</i>	dēscendēns	<i>coming down</i>
latrōnēs: latrō	<i>robber</i>	nīdō: nīdus	<i>nest</i>
īnsidiās: īnsidiac	<i>trap, ambush</i>	praeruptō: praeruptus	<i>steep</i>
ācrit̄er	<i>keenly, fiercely</i>	cumulus	<i>pile</i>
reliquērunt: relinquere	<i>leave</i>	lapidēs: lapis	<i>stone</i>
in dēsertīs	<i>in the desert</i>	fulgentēs: fulgens	<i>shining, glittering</i>

Arabs	<i>Arabian</i>
Arabiam: Arabia	<i>Arabia</i>

mōnstrum, sicut pīca, rēs fulgentēs colligere solet. mōnstrum mē
petīvit, quod zōna mea fulgēbat.”

25

postquam lapidēs īnspexit, laetus sibi dīxit, “hercle! fortūna
fortibus favet!”

in cumulō lapidum erant multae maximaeque gemmae. mercātor
nōnnūllās gemmās in saccō posuit. tum post cumulum gemmārum
sē cēlāvit. mōnstrum mox cum aliā gemmā revēnit, et in nīdō
cōnsēdit.

30

postquam nox vēnit, mercātor audāx in mōnstrum dormiēns
ascendit, et in tergō iacēbat. in tergō mōnstrī per tōtam noctem
haerēbat. māne hoc mōnstrum cum mercātōre, quī in tergō etiam
nunc iacēbat, ēvolāvit. quam fortūnātus erat mercātor! mōnstrum
ad mare tandem advēnit, ubi nāvis erat. mercātor, postquam
nāvem vīdit, dē tergō mōnstrī dēsiluit. in undās maris prope nāvem
cecidit. ita mercātōrem fortūna servāvit.

35

sicut pīca
colligere
zōna
fulgēbat: fulgēre
fortūna

like a magpie
gather, collect
belt
shine
fortune, luck

saccō: saccus bag, purse
audāx bold
dormiēns sleeping
in tergō on its back
cecidit: cadere fall



Practicing the Language

1 Complete each sentence with the right word and then translate.

- 1 ubi Diogenēs hoc dīxit, nōs casam (intrāvī, intrāvīmus)
- 2 Aegyptiī tabernam nostram oppugnāvērunt, ubi vōs in Arabiā (aberās, aberātis)
- 3 ego, ubi in urbe eram, tēcum negōtium (agēbam, agēbāmus)
- 4 tū senem, quī Rōmānōs vituperābat, (audīvistī, audīvistis)
- 5 nōs, quod sacerdotēs ad āram prōcēdēbant. (tacēbāmus, tacēbam)
- 6 tū auxilium mihi semper (dabātis, dabās)
- 7 ego vīnum in āram, quae prō templō erat, (fūdīmus, fūdī)
- 8 vōs mihi togās sordidās (vēndidistis, vēndidistī)

2 Complete each sentence with the most suitable word from the lists below and then translate.

volō	possum
vīs	potes
vult	potest

- 1 māne ad portum ambulāre soleō, quod nāvēs spectāre
- 2 mihi valdē placet puellam audīre, quae suāviter cantāre
- 3 longum iter iam fēcī; ad villam hodiē pervenīre nōn
- 4 amīce, festīnā! nōnne pompam vidēre ?
- 5 mātṛōna, quae filiō dōnum dare, togās in tabernā īnspicit.
- 6 Bregāns, quam rōbustus es! maximās amphorās portāre

About the Language

1 From Stages 4 and 6 of Unit 1 onwards, you have met the words **tamen** and **igitur**:

Quīntus **tamen** ad villam contendit.
However, Quintus hurried to the house.

rēx **igitur** multōs prīncipēs ad aulam invītāvit.
Therefore the king invited many chieftains to the palace.

Notice the position of **tamen** and **igitur** in the sentence.

2 The word **enim** has a similar position in the sentence:

rēx Vespasiānum honōrāvit. Vespasiānus **enim** erat imperātor.
The king honored Vespasian. For Vespasian was the emperor.

3 Further examples:

- 1 Diogenēs nōbīs fūstēs trādidit. Aegyptiī enim casam oppugnābant.
- 2 Quīntus sollicitus erat. senex enim Graecōs Rōmānōsque vituperābat.

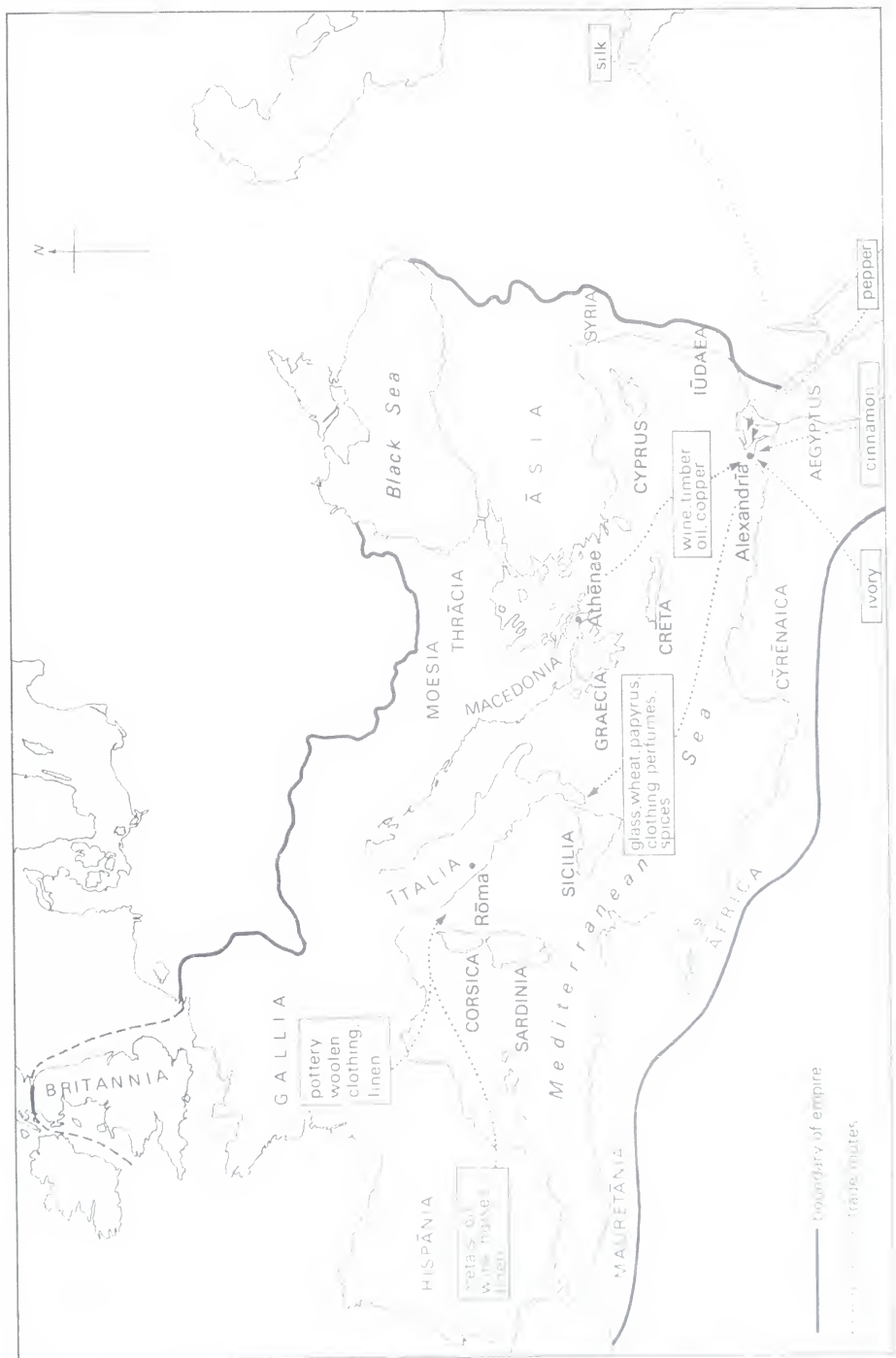
Alexandria

The site of this famous city was chosen by Alexander the Great when he came to Egypt in 331 B.C. Alexander needed a safe harbor for his large fleet of ships, and he chose a fishing village west of the mouth of the Nile, where there was good anchorage, a healthy climate and fresh water, and limestone quarries nearby to provide stone for building. He commanded his architect to plan and build a city which was to be a new center of trade and civilization.

Alexander died before the work had properly begun, but the city was named after him and his body was buried there in a magnificent tomb. He was succeeded as ruler by Ptolemy, one of his generals, whose descendents governed Alexandria and Egypt for the next three hundred years.

By the first century A.D., when Egypt had become part of the Roman empire, Alexandria was probably as large and splendid as Rome itself; it was certainly the greatest city in the eastern part of the empire, with perhaps a million inhabitants. Much of its wealth and importance was due to its position. It stood at a meeting-place of great trade routes, and was therefore excellently placed for trading on a large scale. Merchants and businessmen were attracted to the city because it offered them safe harbors for their ships, huge warehouses for storage, a vast number of dock-workers to carry their goods, and a busy market for buying and selling.

Into Alexandria came luxury goods such as bronze statues from Greece or fine Italian wines, and raw materials such as wood and marble to be used by craftsmen in the local workshops. Out to other countries



The Roman empire at the end of the first century A.D.

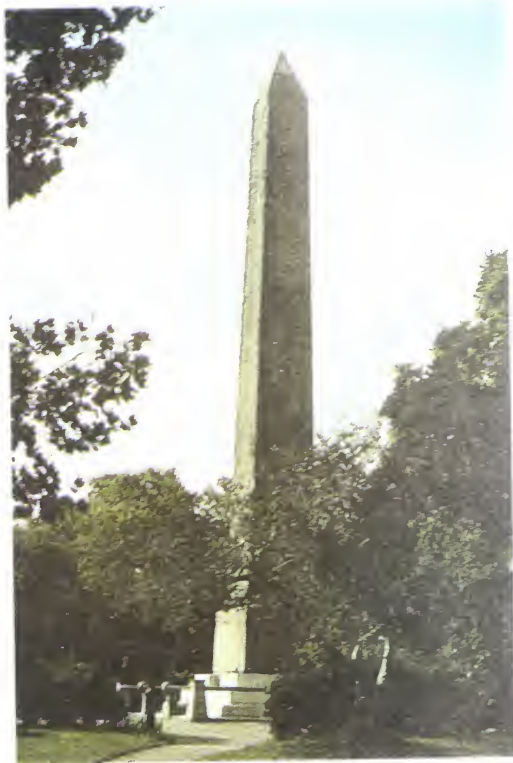
went wheat, papyrus, and much else. A list in the *Red Sea Guide Book*, written by an Alexandrian merchant in the first century A.D., gives some idea of the vast range of goods bought and sold in the city: “clothes, cotton, skins, muslins, silks, brass, copper, iron, gold, silver, silver plate, tin, axes, adzes, glass, ivory, tortoise shell, rhinoceros horn, wine, olive oil, sesame oil, rice, butter, honey, wheat, myrrh, frankincense, cinnamon, fragrant gums, papyrus.”

Travelers from Greece or Italy would approach Alexandria by sea. The first thing they would see, rising above the horizon, would be the huge lighthouse that stood on a little island called Pharos just outside the harbor. This lighthouse, which was itself called Pharos, was one of the seven wonders of the ancient world. It was over 400 feet (122 meters) high, with a fire constantly lit at the top, and it acted as a marker day and night for the thousands of ships that used the port each year.

Alexandria had three harbors. The Great Harbor and the Western Harbor lay on either side of a breakwater three quarters of a mile (1,200 meters) long which joined Pharos island to the mainland. The third harbor was a large lake which lay behind the city and was connected by canals to the river Nile and then by a further canal to the Red Sea; this was the route that led to India.



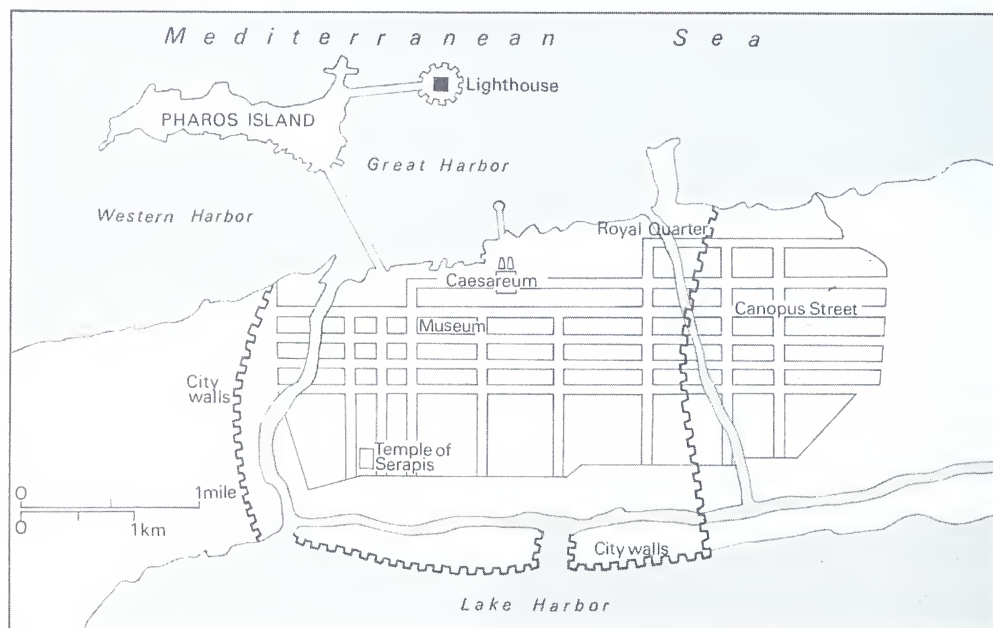
Modern Alexandria: Fort of Kait Bey, site of the Pharos.



Cleopatra's Needle, Central Park,
New York City.

Aerial view of the Great Harbor
(top left) and the Western Harbor
(right) at Alexandria.





Plan of Alexandria.

Alexander's architect had planned the city carefully, with its streets set out in a grid system, crossing each other at right angles as in many modern American cities. The main street, Canopus Street, was more than 100 feet (30 meters) wide, wider than any street in Rome and four times the size of any street that Quintus would have known in Pompeii. Some of the houses were several stories high, and many of the public buildings were built of marble. By the Great Harbor was the Royal Quarter, an area of more than one square mile (260 hectares) containing palaces, temples, gardens, and government offices. West of the Royal Quarter was the Caesareum, where Quintus, in the paragraph on page 79, made his offering of wine. The Caesareum was a temple begun by Queen Cleopatra in honor of the Roman general Marcus Antonius and completed by the Emperor Augustus as a shrine dedicated to himself. In the words of the Jewish writer Philo, it was "wonderfully high and large, full of precious paintings and statues, and beautiful all over with gold and silver; it contains colonnades, libraries, courtyards, and sacred groves, all made as skillfully as possible with no expense spared."

Nearby stood two obelisks, tall narrow pillars of granite, pointed at the top. They were brought from an ancient Egyptian temple at Heliopolis and placed in front of the Caesareum by a Roman engineer in 13 B.C. In the nineteenth century one was removed to London and placed on the embankment of the river Thames, and the other was taken to Central Park, New York. They are known as Cleopatra's Needles.

But Alexandria was more than a city of fine streets, glittering marble, and busy trading; it was a center of education and study. The university, known as the Museum, had the largest library in the ancient world with more than half a million volumes on its shelves. Professional scholars were employed to do research in a wide range of subjects—mathematics, astronomy, anatomy, geography, literature, and languages. Here improved maps of the world were drawn, based on travelers' reports; here Euclid wrote his famous geometry textbook and Aristarchus put forward his theory that the Earth goes around the Sun.

Alexandria was a city of many different races, including Egyptians, Jews, Romans, Africans, and Indians. But on the whole, the people with most power and influence were the Greeks. They had planned the city and built it; they had ruled it before the Romans came and continued to play a part in running it under the Romans; theirs was the official language; they owned great wealth in Alexandria and enjoyed many privileges. This caused jealousy among the other peoples, and was one of the reasons why fights and riots frequently broke out. The Roman governor, or even the emperor himself, often had to step in and try to settle such disputes as fairly and peacefully as possible. After one violent riot involving the Jews, the Emperor Claudius included the following stern warning in a letter to the Alexandrians:

"Although I am very angry with those who stirred up the trouble, I am not going to inquire fully into who was responsible for the riot—I might have said, the war—with the Jews. But I tell you this once and for all: unless you stop quarreling with each other, I shall be forced to show you what even a kind emperor can do when he has good reason to be angry."

Words and Phrases Checklist

Nouns in the checklists for Stages 17–20 are usually listed in the form of their nominative and genitive singular. Verbs are listed as before.

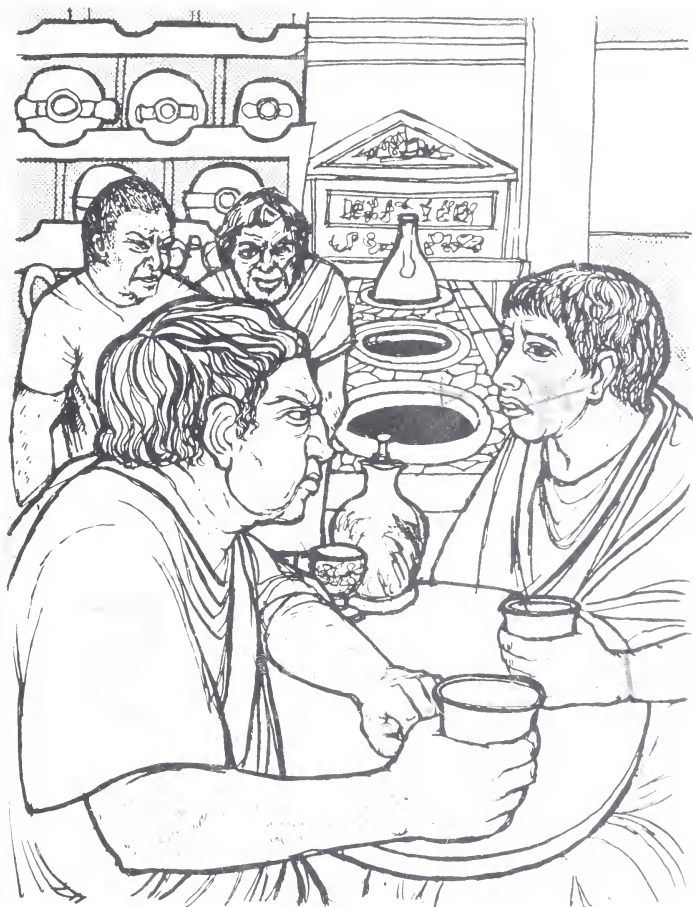
ā, ab	from (also in other contexts: <i>by</i>)
Animus, animī	<i>spirit, soul</i>
appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī	<i>approach, come near to</i>
āra, ārae	<i>altar</i>
bene	<i>well</i>
benignus	<i>kind</i>
dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsilūī	<i>jump down</i>
dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī	<i>despair</i>
diū	<i>for a long time</i>
exanimātus	<i>unconscious</i>
facilis	<i>easy</i>
fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī	<i>shine</i>
gemma, gemmae	<i>jewel, gem</i>
graviter	<i>seriously</i>
haereō, haerēre, haesī	<i>stick, cling</i>
hasta, hastae	<i>spear</i>
hūc	<i>here, to this place</i>
impetus, impetūs	<i>attack</i>
īnsula, īnsulae	<i>island</i>
itaque	<i>and so</i>
latrō, latrōnis	<i>robber</i>
mare, maris	<i>sea</i>
maximus	<i>very big, very large, very great</i>
multitūdō, multitūdinis	<i>crowd</i>
negōtium, negōtiū	<i>business</i>
numquam	<i>never</i>
pauci	<i>few, a few</i>
pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī	<i>reach, arrive at</i>
quondam	<i>one day, once</i>
recipiō, recipere, recēpī	<i>recover, take back</i>
sine	<i>without</i>
soleō, solēre	<i>be accustomed</i>
sordidus	<i>dirty</i>
tergum, tergī	<i>back</i>
vīta, vītae	<i>life</i>

Word Search

effulgence, facilitate, impetuous, paucity, marine, recipient, vitality

- 1 : a brilliant radiance
- 2 : vigor, liveliness
- 3 : impulsive, abruptly spontaneous
- 4 : of or pertaining to the sea
- 5 : one who receives
- 6 : scarcity, dearth
- 7 : to make easier, assist

Stage 18



Eutychus et Clēmēns

pugna

quattuor servī senem in viā pulsābant.
tabernārius et uxor et ancilla pugnam spectābant.
omnēs perterriti erant.



tabernārius perterritus erat, quod senex vehementer clāmābat.
ancilla perterrita erat, quod multus sanguis fluēbat.
uxor perterrita erat, quod servī fustēs ingentēs vibrābant.

taberna

postquam ad urbem advēnimus, ego Clēmētī diū tabernam quaerēbam. tandem Barbillus, quī trīgintā tabernās possidēbat, mihi tabernam optimam obtulit. haec taberna prope templum Īsidis erat. in hāc parte urbis via est, in quā omnēs tabernāriī vitrum vēdunt. facile est illīs tabernāriīs mercem vēdere, quod vitrum Alexandrīnum nōtissimum est. taberna, quam Barbillus mihi offerēbat, optimum situm habēbat, optimum lucrum. Barbillus tamen dubitābat. 5

“sunt multae operae,” inquit, “in illā parte urbis. tabernāriī operās timent, quod pecūniam extorquent et vim īferunt. operae lībertum meum interfēcērunt, quī nūper illam tabernam tenēbat. eum in viā invēnimus mortuum. lībertus, quī senex obstinātus erat, operīs pecūniam dare nōluit. operae eum necāvērunt tabernamque dīripuērunt.” 10

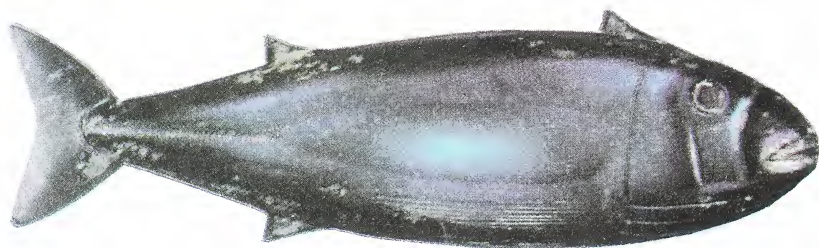
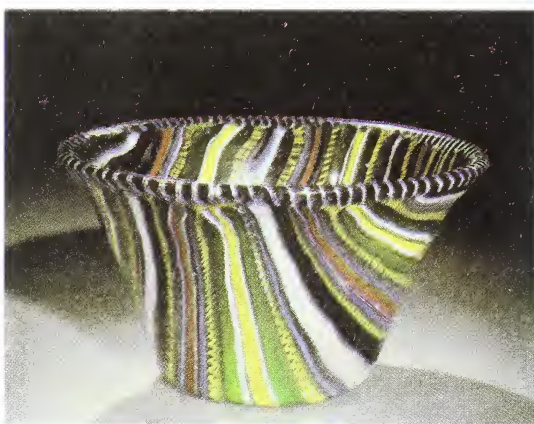
“Clēmēns vir fortis, nōn senex īnfirmus est,” ego Barbillō respondi. “fortūna semper eī favet. hanc tabernam Clēmētī emere volō. tibi centum aureōs offerō. placetne?” 15

“mihi placet,” respondit Barbillus. “centum aureī sufficiunt.”

Barbillō igitur centum aureōs trādidi.

vitrum	glass
situm: situs	position, site
lucrum	profit
dubitābat: dubitāre	be doubtful
operae	hired thugs
extorquent: extorquēre	extort
vim īferunt: vim īferre	use force, violence
dīripuērunt: dīripere	ransack
īnfirmus	weak
centum aureōs	a hundred gold pieces
sufficiunt: sufficere	be enough

Alexandrīnum: Alexandrīnus Alexandrian

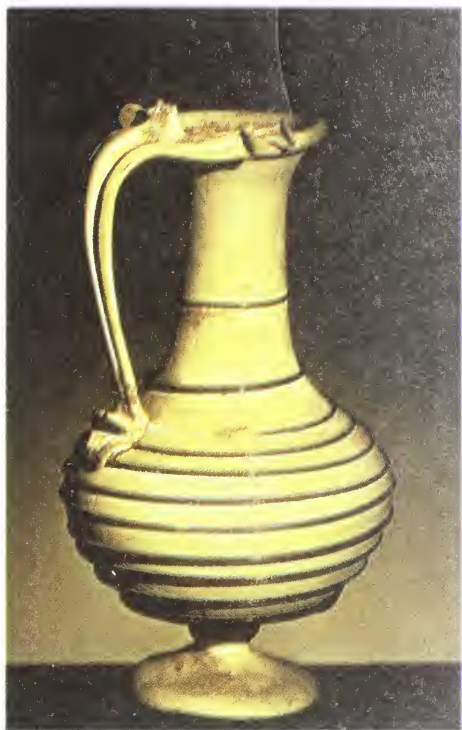


Egyptian glass of the thirteenth century B.C. and Roman glass of the first century B.C. and first century A.D., from the Corning Museum of Glass, Corning, New York.

Core-formed palm-column flask from Egypt (left).

Millefiori bowl (top right) and ribbon-glass bowl (bottom right).

Cover in the form of a fish. The serving dish that matched this cover was probably used to serve a fish dinner: when the fish-shaped cover was removed, an actual cooked fish would be found underneath.



Blown glass pitcher with trailed decoration (left).

The Roman theater at Alexandria (below).



in officinā Eutychi

Prepare!

postquam tabernam Clēmētī dedī, ille mihi grātiās maximās ēgit. statim ad viam, in quā taberna erat, festināvit: adeō cupiēbat tabernam tenēre.

in viā vitreāriōrum erat ingēns turba. ibi Clēmēns tabernam suam prope templum Īsidis cōspexit. valvās ēvulsās vīdit, tabernam dīreptam. īrātus igitur Clēmēns tabernāriūm vīcīnum rogāvit,

“quis hoc fēcit?”

“rogā Eutychum!” inquit tabernārius, quī perterritus erat.

Clēmēns statim Eutychum quaesīvit. facile erat Clēmētī eum invenīre, quod officīnam maximam possidēbat. prō officīnā Eutychi stābant quattuor servī Aegyptiī. Clēmēns numquam hominēs ingentiōrēs quam illōs Aegyptiōs vīderat. eōs tamen nōn timēbat. ūnum servum ex ōrdine trāxit.

“heus! Atlās!” inquit Clēmēns. “num dormīs? Eutychum, dominum tuum, interrogāre volō. cūr mihi obstās? nōn decōrum est tibi lībertō obstāre.”

tum Clēmēns servōs attonitōs praeteriit, et officīnam Eutychi intrāvit.

Eutychus in lectō recumbēbat; cibum ē canistrō gustābat. valdē sūdābat, et manūs in capillīs servī tergēbat. postquam Clēmēntem vīdit, clāmāvit,

“quis es, homuncule? quis tē hūc admīsīt? quid vīs?”

“Quīntus Caecilius Clēmēns sum,” respondit Clēmēns. “dē tabernā, quae dīrepta est, cognōscere volō. nam illa taberna nunc mea est.”

Eutychus, postquam hoc audīvit, Clēmēntem amīcissimē salūtāvit, et eum per officīnam dūxit. ipse Clēmētī fabrōs suōs dēmōnstrāvit. in officīnā erant trīgintā vitreāriī Aegyptiī, quī ōllās ōrnātās faciēbant. dīligenter labōrābant, quod aderat vīlicus, quī virgam vibrābat.

Eutychus, postquam Clēmētī officīnam ostendit, negōtium agere coepit.

“periculōsum est, mī amīce, in viā vitreāriōrum,” inquit. “multī fūrēs ad hanc viam veniunt, multī latrōnēs. omnēs igitur tabernāriī auxilium ā mē petunt. tabernāriī mihi pecūniam dant, ego eīs

praesidium. tabernam tuam servāre possum. omnēs tabernārii mihi decem aureōs quotannīs dare solent. paulum est. num tū praesidium meum recūsāre vīs?”

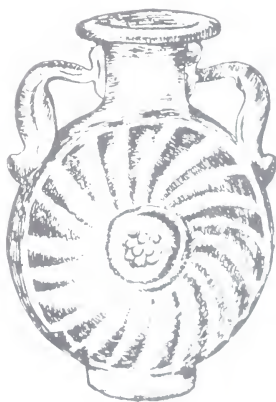
Clēmēns tamen Eutycho nōn crēdēbat. auxilium igitur recūsāvit.

40

“ego ipse tabernam, in quā habitō, servāre possum,” inquit Clēmēns. “praesidium tuum operāsque tuās floccī nōn faciō.”

tum libertus sēcūrus exiit.

officinā: officīna	<i>workshop</i>
adeō	<i>so much, so greatly</i>
in viā vitreāriōrum	<i>in the street of the glassmakers</i>
valvās: valvae	<i>doors</i>
ēvulsās: ēvulsus	<i>wrenched off</i>
vīcīnum: vīcīnus	<i>neighboring, nearby</i>
quattuor	<i>four</i>
interrogāre	<i>question</i>
praeteriit: praeterīre	<i>go past</i>
sūdābat: sūdāre	<i>sweat</i>
manūs . . . tergēbat	<i>was wiping his hands</i>
capillīs: capillī	<i>hair</i>
admīsīt: admittere	<i>let in</i>
amicīssimē: amicē	<i>in a friendly way</i>
ōllās: ōlla	<i>vase</i>
ōrnātās: ōrnātus	<i>decorated</i>
praesidium	<i>protection</i>
paulum	<i>little</i>
floccī nōn faciō	<i>I don't give a hoot about</i>
sēcūrus	<i>without a care</i>





When you have read this story, answer the questions at the end.

Clēmēns tabernārius

Clēmēns mox tabernam suam renovāvit. fabrōs condūxit, quī valvās mūrōsque refēcērunt. multās ōllās cum aliīs ōrnāmentīs vitreīs ēmit. cēterī tabernāriī, quamquam Eutychum valdē timēbant, Clēmēntem libenter adiuvābant. nam Clēmēns cōmis erat et eīs invicem auxilium dabat. facile erat eī lucrum facere, quod pretium aequum semper postulābat. 5

haec taberna, ut dīxī, prope templum deae Īsidis erat. ad hoc templum Clēmēns, quī pius erat, cotīdiē adībat. ibi deam Īsidem adōrābat et eī ōrnāmentum vitreum saepe cōsecrābat.

sacerdōtēs, quī templum administrābant, mox Clēmēntem cognōvērunt. deinde Clēmēns Īsiacīs sē coniūnxit. sacerdōtēs igitur eum in cellam dūxērunt, in quā fēlēs sacra habitābat. sacerdōtēs eī librum sacrum dedērunt, in quō dē mystēriīs deae legere poterat. postquam Īsiacīs sē coniūnxit, saepe in templō cēnābat, fēlemque sacram vidēbat. eam semper mulcēbat, et eī semper aliquid ex 15 paterā suā dabat.

mox plūrimōs amīcōs Clēmēns habēbat. nam tabernāriū, quī Eutycho pecūniam invītī dabant, paulātim Clēmētī cōnfidēbant. tabernāriū Eutychem inimicum putābant, Clēmētem vindicem. tandem omnēs Eutycho pecūniam trādere nōluerunt.

20

itaque Eutyclus operās Aegyptiās collēgit et eīs fūstēs dedit.

“nunc,” inquit Eutyclus, “occāsiōnem capere dēbēmus. necesse est istī Clēmētī poenās dare.”

operae, postquam fūstēs cēpērunt, ad tabernam Clēmētis contendērunt.

25

renovāvit: renovāre	<i>restore</i>
condūxit: conducere	<i>hire</i>
refēcērunt: reficere	<i>repair</i>
ōrnāmentīs:	
ōrnāmentum	<i>ornament</i>
vitreīs: vitreus	<i>glass, made of glass</i>
invicem	<i>in turn</i>
aequum: aequus	<i>fair</i>
ut	<i>as</i>
pius	<i>respectful to the gods</i>
adōrābat: adōrāre	<i>worship</i>
cōsecrābat: cōsecrāre	<i>dedicate</i>
sē coniūnxit:	
sē coniungere	<i>join</i>
sacra: sacer	<i>sacred</i>
mystēriīs: mystēria	<i>mysteries, secret worship</i>
mulcēbat: mulcere	<i>stroke</i>
cōnfidēbant: cōnfidere	<i>trust</i>
putābant: putāre	<i>think</i>
vindicem: vindex	<i>champion, defender</i>
occāsiōnem: occāsiō	<i>opportunity</i>
poenās dare	<i>pay the penalty, be punished</i>
Īsiacīs: Īsiacī	<i>followers of Isis</i>



- 1 How did Clemens get his store repaired and restocked?
- 2 Why did the other storekeepers help Clemens?
- 3 Whose temple did Clemens visit? What offerings did he make there?
- 4 How did Clemens learn more about the worship of the goddess?
- 5 What animal lived in the temple? In what ways did Clemens show kindness to it?
- 6 Why did the storekeepers stop paying Eutyclus?
- 7 What did Eutyclus do? What was his plan?

About the Language

- 1 You have already seen how an adjective changes its ending to agree, in *case* and *number*, with the noun it describes. For example:

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR: *rēx nūntium* **fēlicem** salūtāvit.
The king greeted the lucky messenger.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL: *mercātōrēs* **fessī** dormiēbant.
The tired merchants were sleeping.

- 2 An adjective agrees with the noun it describes not only in case and number but also in a third way, *gender*. All nouns in Latin belong to one of three genders: *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. Compare the following sentences:

Clēmēns amīcōs **callidōs** laudāvit.
Clemens praised the smart friends.

Clēmēns ancillās **callidās** laudāvit.
Clemens praised the smart slave-girls.

In both sentences, the word for *smart* is accusative plural. But in the first sentence, the masculine form **callidōs** is used, because it describes **amīcōs**, which is masculine; in the second sentence, the feminine form **callidās** is used, because it describes **ancillās**, which is feminine.

- 3 The forms of adjective which you have met most often are listed on p.167 of the Review Grammar.
- 4 Translate the following examples and pick out the adjective in each sentence:
- 1 “ubi est coquus novus?” rogāvit Salvius.
 - 2 “ubi est horreum novum?” rogāvit Salvius.
 - 3 magnae nāvēs in portū Alexandriāe stābant.
 - 4 tabernāriī ignāvī per fenestrās spectābant.
 - 5 nūntius dominō longam epistulam trādīdit.
 - 6 milītēs custōdem stultum mox invēnērunt.

Find the noun described by each adjective, and refer to the “Complete Vocabulary” in the Language Information Section to find the gender of each noun-and-adjective pair.

- 5 The Latin word for *who* or *which* at the beginning of a relative clause changes like an adjective to match the gender of the word it describes. Notice how the forms **quī** (masculine), **quae** (feminine), and **quod** (neuter) are used in the following examples:

rēx, **quī** in aulā habitābat, caerimōniam nūntiāvit.

*The king, **who** lived in the palace, announced a ceremony.*

puella, **quae** per forum contendēbat, operās vīdit.

*The girl, **who** was hurrying through the forum, saw the thugs.*

dōnum, **quod** āthlētam maximē dēlectāvit, erat statua.

*The gift, **which** pleased the athlete very much, was a statue.*

- 6 Nouns referring to males, e.g. **pater**, **filius**, **centuriō**, are usually masculine; nouns referring to females, e.g. **māter**, **fīlia**, **uxor**, are usually feminine. Other nouns can be masculine (e.g. **hortus**), feminine (e.g. **nāvis**), or neuter (e.g. **nōmen**).

prō tabernā Clēmēntis



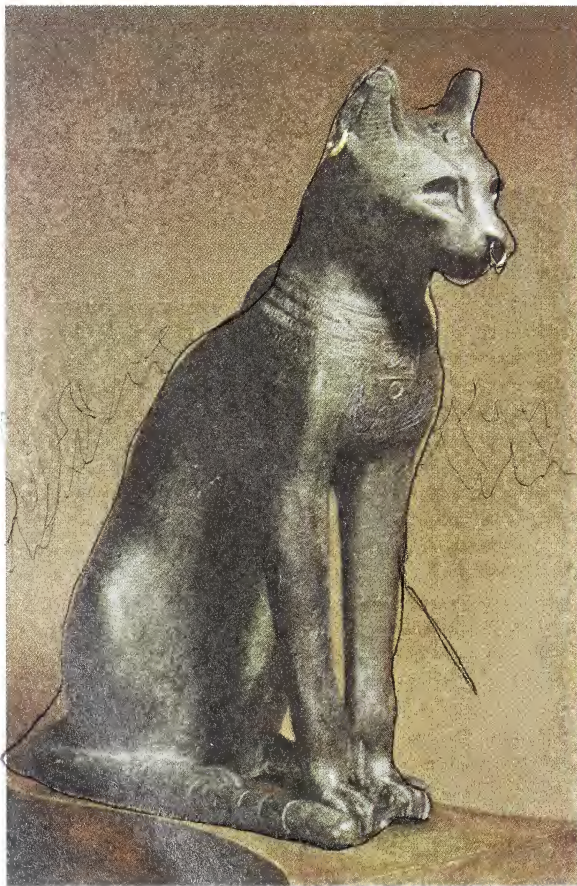
Clēmēns in templō deae Īsidis cum cēterīs Īsiacīs saepe cēnābat. quondam, ubi ā templō, in quō cēnāverat, domum redībat, amīcum cōspexit accurrentem.

“taberna ardet! taberna tua ardet!” clāmāvit amīcus. “tabernam tuam dīripiunt Eutychus et operae. eōs vīdī valvās ēvellentēs, vitrum fragentēs, tabernam incendentēs. fuge! fuge ex urbe! Eutychus tē interficere vult. nēmō eī operīsque resistere potest.”

Clēmēns tamen nōn fūgit, sed ad tabernam quam celerrimē contendit. postquam illūc advēnit, prō tabernā stābat immōtus. valvās ēvulsās, tabernam dīreptam vīdit. Eutychus extrā tabernam cum operīs Aegyptiīs stābat, rīdēbatque.

5

10



**Bronze cat from
Roman Egypt.**

“mī dulcissime!” inquit Eutychus cachinnāns. “nōne tē dē hāc viā monuī? nōne amīcōs habēs quōs vocāre potes? cūr absunt? fortasse sapientiōrēs sunt quam tū.”

Clēmēns cum summā tranq̄uillitāte eī respondit,

15

“deī tamen nōn absunt. deī mē servāre possunt; deī postrēmō hominēs scelestōs pūnīre solent.”

“quid dīcis?” inquit Eutychus irātissimus. “tūne mihi ita dīcere audēs?”

tum Eutychus operīs signum dedit. statim quattuor Aegyptiī cum īfestīs fūstibus Clēmētī appropinquābant. Clēmēns cōstitit. via, in quā stābat, erat dēserta. / tabernāriī perterritī per valvās tabernārum spectābant. / omnēs invītī Clēmētem dēseruerant, simulatque Eutychus et operae advēnērunt.

20

subitō fēlēs sacra, quam Clēmēns mulcēre solēbat, ē templō exiit. Clēmētem rēctā petīvit. in manūs Clēmēntis īnsiluit. omnēs Aegyptiī statim fūstēs abiēcērunt et ad pedēs Clēmēntis prōcubuērunt. operae Clēmētem, quem fēlēs sacra servābat, laedere nōn audēbant.

25

saeviēbat Eutychus, sicut taurus irātus. tum fēlēs in caput Eutychī īnsiluit, quod vehementer rāsīt.

30

“melius est tibi fugere,” inquit Clēmēns.

Eutychus cum operīs suīs perterritus fūgit. postea neque Clēmētem neque tabernāriōs laedere temptābat. mox etiam ex urbe discessit. nunc Clēmēns est prīnceps tabernāriōrum.

35

domum: domus	home
accurrentem: accurrens	running up
ēvellentēs: ēvellēns	wrenching off
frangentēs: frangēns	breaking
incendentēs: incendēns	burning, setting on fire
monuī: monēre	warn
sapientiōrēs: sapiēns	wise
tranq̄uillitāte:	
tranq̄uillitās	calmness
scelestōs: scelestus	wicked
dēseruerant: dēserere	desert
īnsiluit: īnsilire	jump onto, jump into
abiēcērunt: abicere	throw away
laedere	harm
sicut	like
rāsīt: rādere	scratch
neque . . . neque	neither . . . nor
temptābat: temptāre	try

The shopkeeper is terrified as he jumps through the shop door.



Practicing the Language

1 Complete each sentence with the right word or phrase and then translate.

- 1, quam Clēmēns tenēbat, in viā vitreāriōrum erat. (taberna, tabernae)
- 2 ad tabernam Clēmēntis veniēbant, quod ille pretium aequum postulābat. (fēmina Rōmāna, multae fēminae)
- 3 in tabernā Clēmēntis erant, quās vitreārīi Aegyptiū fēcerant. (ōlla pretiōsa, multae ōllae)
- 4 ubi Eutyclus et operae advēnērunt, valdē timēbant. (tabernārius Graecus, cēterī tabernārīi)
- 5 ad templum Īsidis festīnāvit et Clēmētī dē tabernā nārrāvit. (amīcus fidēlis, amīcī Graecī)
- 6 ē templō Īsidis celeriter discessērunt et ad tabernam cucurrērunt. (amīcus fidēlis, duo amīcī)

2 Complete each sentence with the right word and then translate.

- 1 Clēmēns Quīntō, quī tabernam, grātiās maximās ēgit. (ēmerat, ēmerant)
- 2 taberna, in quā operae lībertum Barbillī, dīrepta erat. (interfēcerat, interfēcerant)
- 3 Clēmēns igitur ad Eutyclus, quī operās, festīnāvit. (mīserat, mīserant)
- 4 Eutyclus Clēmēntem, quī quattuor servōs ingentēs, amīcissimē salūtāvit. (praeterierat, praeterierant)
- 5 Eutyclus dē tabernārīis, quī praesidium, Clēmētī nārrāvit. (petīverat, petīverant)
- 6 Clēmēns tamen operās, quae tabernam, floccī nōn faciēbat. (dīripuerat, dīripuerant)

3 Complete the sentences of the story with the right word from the following list, and then translate. Do not use any word more than once.

mīsī

frēgī

vituperāvī

mīsistī

frēgistī

vituperāvistī

Eutyclus in officīnā stābat. vīlicum ad sē vocāvit.

“ego amīcō meō ducentās ōllās heri prōmīsī,” inquit Eutyclus.
“quot ōllās ad tabernam amīcī meī mīsistī?”

“ego centum ōllās ad eum,” respondit vīlicus.

“centum ōllās!” exclāmāvit Eutyclus. “cūr tū centum solum ōllās ad amīcum meum?”

“servus canistrum, in quō ōllae erant, stultissimē omīsīt. multae ōllae sunt frāctae,” respondit vīlicus.

“ubi est iste servus, quī ōllās frēgit?” rogāvit Eutyclus. vīlicus statim servum ad Eutychem trāxit.

“cūr tū tot ōllās?” rogāvit Eutyclus.

“ego ōllās, quod vīlicus mē terruit,” inquit servus. “vīlicus virgam vibrāvit et mē vituperāvit.”

“cūr tū virgam vibrāvistī et hunc servum?” rogāvit Eutyclus.

“ego servum, quod ignāvus erat,” respondit vīlicus.

“servus ignāvus erat, tū neglegēns,” inquit Eutyclus. “necesse est vōbīs per tōtam noctem labōrāre.”

ducentās: ducentī *two hundred*

quot? *how many?*

solum *only*

stultissimē: stultē *foolishly*

omīsīt: omittere *drop*

frēgit: frangere *break*

About the Language

- 1 In Unit 1, you met a number of verbs, such as **faveō**, **crēdō**, etc., which are often used with a noun in the dative case. For example:

mercātōrēs **Holcōniō** favēbant.

The merchants gave their support to Holconius.

or *The merchants supported Holconius.*

- 2 You have now met some other verbs which are used in the same way:

turba **nōbīs** obstat.

The crowd is an obstacle to us.

or *The crowd is obstructing us.*

Quīntus **operīs** resistēbat.

Quintus put up a resistance to the thugs.

or *Quintus resisted the thugs.*

- 3 Further examples:

1 quattuor servī Aegyptī mihi obstābant.

2 omnēs tabernārii Quīntō cōfīdēbant.

3 Eutychō resistere nōn possum.

4 sacerdōtes lentē templō appropinquaverunt.

Glassmaking

In the stories in this Stage, Quintus sets Clemens up in what is thought to have been one of Alexandria's most successful industries—glassmaking. The earliest Egyptian glass vessels, discovered in tombs, date from about 1500 B.C., and glass continued to be made in Egypt throughout the period of the Pharaohs.

When Alexandria was founded in 331 B.C., craftsmen of many kinds were attracted to the new city from older cities of the eastern Mediterranean and Egypt. Among these craftsmen were glassmakers, who introduced some new glassmaking techniques and produced new shapes of vessels. These glassmakers, along with glassmakers in other eastern Mediterranean cities, thrived in the centuries which followed. During the reign of the Emperor Augustus (27 B.C.–A.D. 14), glassmakers from Syro-Palestinian cities like Sidon and Tyre brought the latest techniques of glassmaking to Rome, and soon the industry grew to meet the increasing demand for glass throughout the Roman world, not only in Greece, Syria, Palestine, and Egypt where it had long been in demand, but also in newer, northern areas of the empire such as Gaul, the Rhineland in Germany, and Britain.

Glass is made from sand, plant ash or natron, and lime. Its earliest use was as a colored, opaque, or transparent glaze applied to ceramics before they were fired (as is still done today). As time went on, craftsmen discovered that if glass is heated until it becomes semi-liquid, it can be shaped and left to cool into a new, solid, independently standing shape. At first this shaping was carried out by wrapping a coil of molten glass around a core (clay, mud, sand, and an organic binder like dung) which had been molded around a rod into the shape of a vase or any other object which was required. When the glass had cooled, the rod was pulled out from the core and the remaining parts of the core scraped out. This method, however, was only suitable for making small vessels, such as perfume containers.

The colors used for glass in Egypt of the late Bronze Age were still favored by glassmakers of the Roman period: pale shades of blue, bluish green, green, and yellow. The creation of each of these colors depended on the glassmaker's choice of sand, as these colors were due to the varying amounts of iron impurities in different types of sand. But glassmakers could also add organic substances to achieve more brilliant



A modern glass blower at work in the Corning Glass Center, Corning, New York. The procedure he is following is described on p. 114.

colors. These additional colors were most often used just for decoration, frequently by trailing thin lines of molten glass onto a finished vessel, rather like piping colored icing onto a fancy cake. The bowl on page 100 (top right) is a mosaic bowl of the Hellenistic type, in which short



sections cut from multicolored canes of glass were placed side by side around a mold, then heated in a glass furnace until they fused.

Late in the first century B.C., in Palestine or Syria, a new invention completely changed the glassmaking industry. The glassmakers discovered that instead of forming bottles around a core or casting bowls in or around molds, they could pick them up on the end of a hollow pipe and shape them by blowing down the pipe. Glass-blowing is illustrated in the photograph on p. 113. The modern workman in the Corning, New York Glass Center has dipped his pipe into the crucible (the porcelain box which has been pulled forward out of the fire) in the furnace at his left and has lifted out a blob of molten glass. He is blowing steadily down the pipe in order to shape the glass into a hollow bubble. By careful reheating and repeated blowing, the glass bubble can be made, as here, quite big. Many different shapes can be produced by swinging the bubble gently during the blowing, or by using special tools for shaping and cutting. Handles, bases, and decorations can then be added.

After the invention of glass blowing, glassmakers were able to produce many different shapes and sizes of vessels quickly and efficiently. From then on, glass could be used not only for making luxury goods but for producing large quantities of ordinary household objects for everyday use. The use of glass spread everywhere in the Roman empire and among all classes of society. Glassmakers and glass-sellers, including those in Alexandria, prospered.

Egypt

South of Alexandria stretched the fertile valley of the river Nile. Every year the Nile flooded, watering the land and depositing rich new soil on the fields. This produced not only enough wheat to supply the whole of Egypt but also a large surplus to be sold abroad, in particular at Rome. However, the profits from the wheat trade benefited only a small number of people.

Before the Romans came to Egypt, the country had been ruled by Egyptian “pharaohs” (kings), then by Greeks. These rulers had worked out a system for making the fullest possible use of the land for their own advantage. They regarded the whole country as their own property, and treated the peasant farmers as their private force of workers. They had drawn up a detailed list of all the farms in Egypt and the crops grown on them, and in every village lived government officials whose job was to keep the list up-to-date and check up on the peasants who worked on each farm.

The peasants had no choice but to work hard all year around. They were not allowed to leave their village without permission; they had to plant whatever crop they were told; and they did not receive their share of the harvest until the ruler had received his. They were also responsible for the upkeep and repair of the country’s canals and dykes. Everything the peasants did was checked by the officials. The following certificate, for example, was issued by an official called Dioscurus:

“Certificate. Year 16 of the Emperor Caesar Traianus Hadrianus Augustus. Zoilus son of Peteusuchus son of Elites, his mother being Taorsenuphis, has worked on the embankment operations for four days at the canal of Patsonitis in Bacchias. I, Dioscurus, signed this.”

Such careful checking-up gave the peasants little chance of going unnoticed or avoiding work. All they could do was complain. Many letters have been found addressed by peasants to government officials, and they usually say the same thing: “We are worn out; we shall run away.”

When the Romans came, they did nothing to improve the life of the peasants. The certificate quoted above was issued in the reign of the Emperor Hadrian, more than a hundred and fifty years after the



Farm workers in modern Egypt.

Sphinx and pyramid at Giza, near Cairo.



Romans' arrival in Egypt. Like the previous rulers, the Romans were more concerned to use the land for their own benefit than to improve the working conditions of peasant farmers. Above all, they wanted to make sure of a steady supply of grain to Rome.

Further money was needed by the government in order to maintain the Alexandrian fleet of merchant ships, the Pharos, the police and the huge numbers of officials. This money was raised by taxation. There were taxes, for example, on vineyards, slaves, dove-cotes, and imported and exported goods. Government officials checked continually on the day-to-day activities of the Egyptians. If a man went fishing, an official went with him to register the catch; if anyone sailed out of Alexandria without a permit, he might be fined one third of his property. Licenses were required for such activities as brewing, beekeeping, and pig-breeding.

Under these conditions, it is not surprising that bribery and corruption were common. Here is an extract from the private accounts kept by a Greek living in Egypt:

gift	240 drachmas
to the guard	20 drachmas
bribes	2,200 drachmas
to two police agents	100 drachmas
to Hermias, police agent	100 drachmas
to a soldier	500 drachmas

Although such payments were illegal, they were regarded as a normal part of daily life, and the government usually ignored them.

Words and Phrases Checklist

Adjectives from now on are usually listed as in the Language Information Section of this Unit (see p. 198 for details).

aliquid	<i>something</i>
audeō, audēre	<i>dare</i>
caput, capitis	<i>head</i>
coepī	<i>I began</i>
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī	<i>find out, get to know</i>
cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī	<i>stand one's ground, stand firm</i>
dea, deae	<i>goddess</i>
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī	<i>point out, show</i>
discēdō, discēdere, discessī	<i>depart, leave</i>
fortasse	<i>perhaps</i>
fortūna, fortūnae	<i>fortune, luck</i>
frangō, frangere, frēgī	<i>break</i>
ibi	<i>there</i>
invītus, invīta, invītum	<i>unwilling</i>
libenter	<i>gladly</i>
longus, longa, longum	<i>long</i>
manus, manūs	<i>hand</i>
mīles, mīlitis	<i>soldier</i>
nam	<i>for</i>
nēmō	<i>no one</i>
nox, noctis	<i>night</i>
obstō, obstāre, obstitī	<i>obstruct, block the way</i>
pars, partis	<i>part</i>
perīculōsus, perīculōsa, perīculōsum	<i>dangerous</i>
petō, petere, petīvī	<i>beg for, ask for</i>
postea	<i>afterwards</i>
postrēmō	<i>finally, lastly</i>
praesidium, praesidiū	<i>protection</i>
prō	<i>in front of</i>
prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubui	<i>fall down</i>
quō?	<i>where, where to?</i>
recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī	<i>refuse</i>
resistō, resistere, restitī	<i>resist</i>
sacer, sacra, sacrum	<i>sacred</i>
saeviō, saevīre, saevī	<i>be in a rage</i>

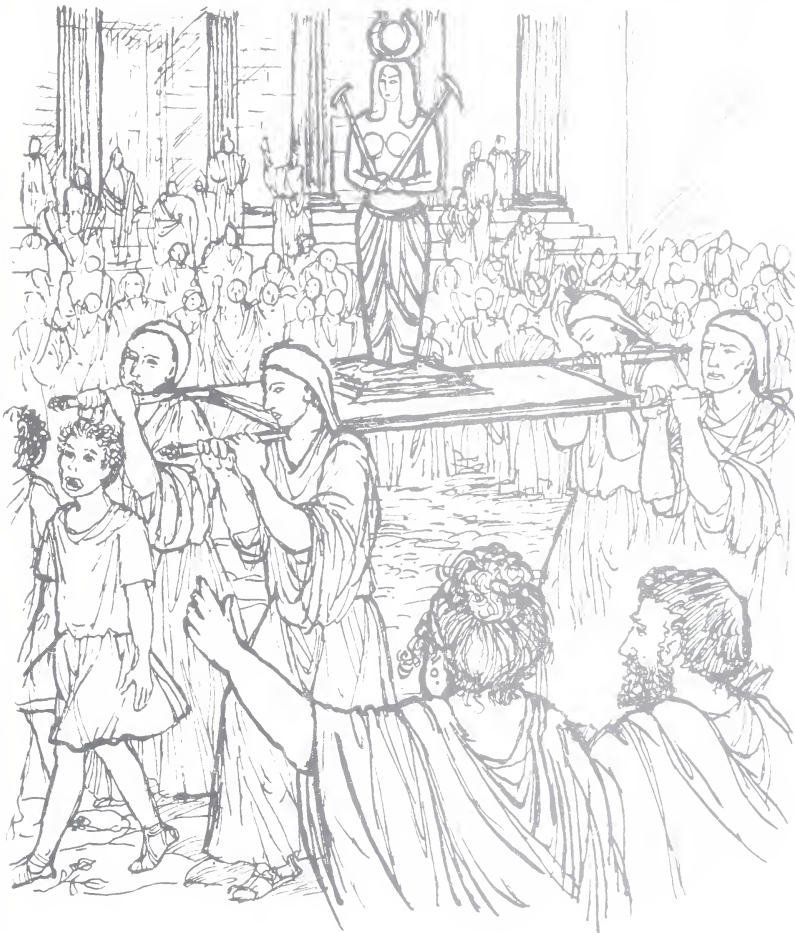


Word Search

decapitate, demonstrable, manually, militant, nocturnal, petition, sacrilege

- 1: an offense against something sacred
- 2: to behead
- 3: able to be shown or proven
- 4: by hand, without mechanical assistance
- 5: aggressive; forcefully insistent
- 6: to make a formal request
- 7: active by night

Stage 19



Isis



hic vir est Aristō.
Aristō est amīcus Barbillī.
in villā splendidā habitat,
sed miserrimus est.



haec fēmina est Galatēa.
Galatēa est uxor Aristōnis.
Galatēa maritum saepe castīgat,
numquam laudat.



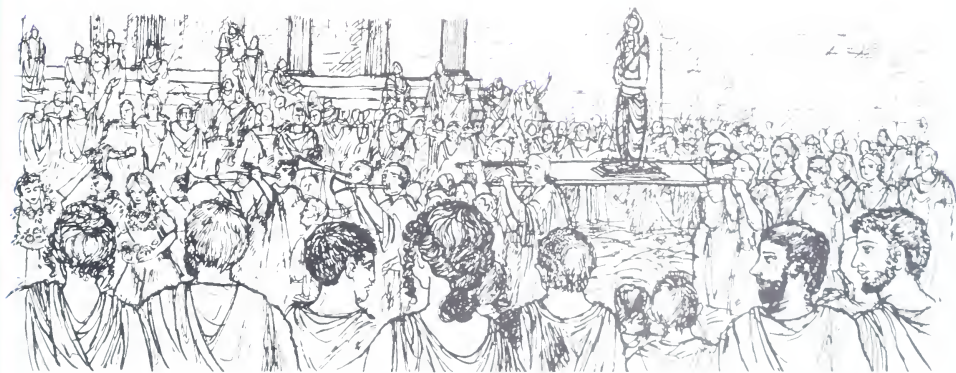
haec puella est Helena.
Helena est filia Aristōnis et Galatēae.
multī iuvenēs hanc puellam amant,
quod pulcherrima est.



pompa splendida per viās
Alexandriāe prōcēdit.
omnēs Alexandrinī hanc
pompa spectāre volunt.



hī virī sunt sacerdotēs deae
Īsidis. Aristō hōs virōs intentē
spectat. sacerdotēs statuam
deae per viās portant.



hae puellae prō pompā currunt.
Helena hās puellās intentē
spectat. puellae corōnās
rosārum gerunt.

pompa ad templum Serāpidis
advenit. prope hoc templum
stant duo iuvenēs. hī iuvenēs
tamen pompa nōn spectant.

Aristō

Aristō vir miserrimus est, quod vītam dūram vīvit. pater Aristōnis scriptor nōtissimus erat, quī in Graeciā habitābat. tragoediās optimās scrībēbat. Aristō, quod ipse tragoediās scrībere vult, vītam quiētam quaerit; sed uxor et filia eī obstant.

Galatēa, uxor Aristōnis, amīcōs ad villam semper invitat. amīcī Galatēae sunt tībīcinēs et citharoedī. amīcī in villā Aristōnis semper cantant et iocōs faciunt. Aristō amīcōs uxōris semper fugit. 5

Helena quoque, filia Aristōnis et Galatēae, patrem vexat. multōs iuvenēs ad villam patris invitat. amīcī Helenae sunt poētae. in villā Aristōnis poētae versūs suōs recitant. Aristō hōs versūs nōn amat, quod scurrilēs sunt. saepe poētae inter sē pugnant. saepe Aristō amīcōs filiae ē villā expellit. difficile est Aristōnī tragoediās scrībere. 10

vīvit: vīvere	<i>live</i>
scriptor	<i>writer</i>
tragoediās: tragoedia	<i>tragedy</i>
tībīcinēs: tībīcen	<i>pipe player</i>
citharoedī: citharoedus	<i>cithara player</i>
expellit: expellere	<i>throw out</i>

When you have read this story, answer the questions at the end.

diēs fēstus

cīvēs laetī erant. nam hiems erat cōnfecta, et vēr aderat. iam prīmus diēs vērīs erat. iam sacerdōtēs deam Īsidem per viās urbis portāre solēbant. sacerdōtēs effigiem deae ad portum quotannis ferēbant. pompa, quam plūrimī Alexandrīnī spectāre volēbant, splendida erat. 5

hanc pompam tamen Barbillus spectāre nōlēbat.

“nōn commodum est mihi hodiē ad urbem īre,” inquit. “ego hanc pompam saepe vīdī, tū tamen numquam. amīcus meus igitur, Aristō, tē ad pompam dūcere vult.”

Barbillō grātiās ēgī, et cum Aristōne ad portum ībam. Galatēa et filia, Helena, nōbīscum ībant. viās urbis iam complēbant cīvēs Alexandrīnī. ubi portuī appropinquābāmus, Galatēa filiam et marītum assiduē castīgābat: 10

“Helena! nōlī festīnāre! tolle caput! Aristō! ēmovē hanc turbam! turba Alexandrīnōrum tōtam viam complet. in magnō periculō sumus.” 15

postquam ad templum Augustī vēnimus, locum petīvimus, unde pompam vidēre poterāmus.

“locum optimum nōvimus, unde spectāculum vidēre solēmus,” inquit Galatēa. “illinc pompam et nāvem sacram vidēre possumus. servus nōbīs illum locum servat. Aristō! nōne servum māne ēmīsistī?” 20

“ēheu!” Aristō sibi dīxit.

ubi ad illum locum, quem Galatēa ēlēgerat, tandem pervēnimus, Galatēa duōs iuvenēs cōspexit. hī iuvenēs locum tenēbant, ubi Galatēa stāre volēbat. 25

“marīte!” exclāmāvit, “ēmovē hōs iuvenēs! ubi est servus noster? nōne servum ēmīsistī?”

“cārissima,” respondit Aristō, quī anxius circumspectābat, “melius est nōbīs locum novum quaerere. iste servus sāne neglegēns erat.” 30

Galatēa tamen, quae iam īrātissima erat, Aristōnem incitāvit. ille igitur iuvenibus appropinquāvit et cōmiter locum poscēbat. uxor tamen vehementer clāmāvit,

“iuvenēs! cēdite! nōlite nōbīs obstāre!” 35

iuvenēs, quamquam rem graviter ferēbant, cessērunt. iuvenēs Galatēam spectābant timidī, Helenam avidī.

subitō spectātōrēs pompam cōspexērunt. statim multitudō spectātōrum clāmōrem sustulit.

“ecce pompa! ecce! dea Īsis!” 40

diēs fēstus	<i>festival, holiday</i>
cōfecta: cōfectus	<i>finished</i>
vēr	<i>spring</i>
assiduē	<i>continually</i>
castīgābat: castīgāre	<i>scold, nag</i>
tolle!	<i>hold up!</i>
unde	<i>from where</i>
illinc	<i>from there</i>
sāne	<i>obviously</i>
cōmiter	<i>politely, courteously</i>
avidī: avidus	<i>eager</i>

- 1 Why were the citizens happy?
- 2 What ceremony took place in Alexandria every year at this time?
- 3 What arrangement had Barbillus made for Quintus to see the ceremony? Why did Barbillus not go himself?
- 4 Why did Aristo say “ēheu!” to himself (line 23)?
- 5 What did Galatea tell her husband to do, when she saw the young men? What did her husband suggest instead?
- 6 Why did the young men move?
- 7 How would you describe Galatea’s behavior in this story?

pompa



pompa adveniēbat. prō pompā currēbant multae puellae, quae flōrēs in canistrīs ferēbant. puellae flōrēs spectātōribus dabant, et in viam spargēbant. post multitudinem puellārum tubicinēs et puerī prōcēdēbant. puerī carmen dulce cantābant. tubicinēs tubās īnflābant. nōs, quī pompam plānē vidēre poterāmus, assiduē 5 plaudēbāmus. Helena, ubi tot flōrēs vīdit sparsōs, Galatēae dīxit,

“spectā illās rosās, quās fēminae in viam spargunt! rosās pulchriōrēs quam illās numquam vīdī.”

duo iuvenēs tamen, quōs Galatēa ē locō ēmōverat, pompam vidēre vix poterant. 10

“pompam vidēre nōn possum,” inquit iuvenis. “sed spectā illam puellam! puellam pulchriōrem quam illam rārō vīdī.”

Galatēa, simulatque hunc iuvenem audīvit, “Helena! hūc venī!” clāmāvit. “stā prope mē! Aristō! cūr filiam tuam in tantā multitudīne nōn servās?” 15

subitō omnēs tubicinēs tubās vehementer īnflābant. sonitus tubārum mīrābilis erat.

“ō mē miseram! ō caput meum!” clāmāvit Galatēa. “audīte illōs tubicinēs! audīte sonitum! quam raucus est sonitus tubārum!”

“tubicinēs vix audīre possum,” clāmāvit alter iuvenis. “quam 20 raucae sunt vōcēs fēminārum Graecārum!”

post turbam puerōrum tubicinumque vēnit dea ipsa. quattuor sacerdotēs effigiem deae in umerīs ferēbant.

“spectā illam stolam croceam!” clāmāvit Galatēa. “pulcherrima

est illa stola, pretiōsissima quoque. ēheu! vīlēs sunt omnēs stolae meae, quod marītus avārus est.” 25

subitō iuvenēs, quī effigiem vidēre nōn poterant, Galatēam trūsērunt. iuvenis forte pedem Galatēae calcāvit. illa, postquam valdē exclāmāvit, eum vituperāvit.

“ō iuvenem īnsolentissimum! nōlī mē vexāre! nōn decōrum est mātṛonam trūdere. num bēstia es?” 30

Helena “māter!” inquit “hic iuvenis tibi forte nocuit. spectātōrēs nōs premunt, quod pompam vidēre cupiunt.”

Galatēa tamen filiam castīgāvit, quod iuvenem dēfendēbat. tum marītum quoque castīgāre coepit. 35

“Aristō! cūr mē nōn servās? uxōrem filiamque floccī nōn facis. miserrima sum!”

Aristō, postquam uxōrem lēnīvit, mihi dīxit.

“ēheu! facile est mihi tragoediās scrībere. uxor mē vexat, filia mātrem. tōta vīta mea est tragoedia.” 40

spargēbant: spargere	<i>scatter</i>
tubicinēs: tubicen	<i>trumpeter</i>
carmen	<i>song</i>
dulce: dulcis	<i>sweet</i>
īnflābant: īnflāre	<i>blow</i>
plānē	<i>clearly</i>
sparsōs: sparsus	<i>scattered</i>
rosās: rosa	<i>rose</i>
rārō	<i>rarely</i>
sonitus	<i>sound</i>
raucus	<i>harsh</i>
vīlēs: vīlis	<i>cheap</i>
trūsērunt: trūdere	<i>push, shove</i>
calcāvit: calcāre	<i>step on</i>
nocuit: nocēre	<i>hurt</i>
premunt: premere	<i>push</i>
lēnīvit: lēnīre	<i>soothe, calm down</i>



Roman statue of the goddess Isis with sistrum and water jug.

nāvis sacra

sacerdōtēs, ubi ad portum pervēnērunt, effigiem deae Īsidis dēposuērunt. in portū stābat nāvis, quae ōrnātissima erat. tōta puppis erat aurāta. corōna rosārum dē mālō nāvis pendēbat. nullī tamen nautae in nāve erant.

sacerdōtēs cum effigiē deae ad hanc nāvem prōcessērunt. deinde pontifex ipse deae Īsidī precēs adhibēbat. cīvēs sacerdōtēsque rosās in nāvem et in mare iēcērunt. tum nautae rudentēs solvere coepērunt. ventus secundus nāvem in altum lentē impellēbat. spectātōrēs iterum iterumque plaudēbant. clāmor spectātōrum precēsque sacerdōtum aurēs nostrās implēbant.

“nunc nāvis solūta est; nunc mare placidum. dea Īsis nōbīs favet. dea cīvibus Alexandrīnīs favet.”

sacerdōtēs, postquam nāvem sacram ita ēmisērunt, effigiem deae ad templum reportāvērunt. cīvēs per viās urbis laetī currēbant.

ad villam Aristōnis lentē reveniēbāmus. Helena cum illīs iuvenibus ambulābat, quōs Galatēa ē locō ēmōverat. hoc tamen Galatēa nōn sēnsit, quod assiduē maritum castīgābat:

“in hāc urbe diūtius manēre nōlō. tū nihil facis, nihil cūrās. servum nōn ēmisistī, quamquam tē saepe monuī. ēheu! cīvēs Alexandrīnī sunt bēstiae. filiam nostram vexābant illī iuvenēs. Helena ērubescēbat; paene lacrimābat. cūr eam numquam servās? mihi semper necesse est filiam nostram cūrāre.”

“ubi est Helena?” rogāvit Aristō.

“nōnne tēcum ambulābat?” respondit Galatēa. “ēheu! illī iuvenēs columbam meam iterum agitant.”

“stultissima es, uxor!” respondit ille. “columba iuvenēs agitat, nōn iuvenēs columbam.”

puppis	<i>stern</i>	ventus	<i>wind</i>
corōna	<i>garland, wreath</i>	secundus	<i>favorable, following</i>
dē mālō	<i>from the mast</i>	in altum	<i>towards the open sea</i>
pendēbat: pendere	<i>hang</i>	impellēbat: impellere	<i>carry</i>
pontifex	<i>high priest</i>	implēbant: implere	<i>fill</i>
precēs adhibēbat	<i>offered prayers to</i>	solūta: solūtus	<i>untied, cast off</i>
iēcērunt: iacere	<i>throw</i>	placidum: placidus	<i>calm, peaceful</i>
rudentēs: rudens	<i>cable, rope</i>	reportāvērunt: reportāre	<i>carry back</i>
solvere	<i>untie, cast off</i>	ērubescēbat: ērubescere	<i>blush</i>

About the Language

1 You have now met the following forms of the Latin word for *this* (plural *these*):

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	NOMINATIVE	ACCUSATIVE	NOMINATIVE	ACCUSATIVE
MASCULINE	hic	hunc	hī	hōs
FEMININE	haec	hanc	hae	hās
NEUTER	hoc	hoc		

hic vir est Barbillus. ***This** man is Barbillus.*
hanc gemmam invēnī. *I've found **this** jewel.*
hae stolae sunt sordidae! ***These** dresses are dirty!*
tibi **hōs** flōrēs trādō. *I hand **these** flowers to you.*

- 2 Further examples:
- 1 haec cēna est optima.
 - 2 operae hunc mercātōrem vexant.
 - 3 hoc templum prope forum est.
 - 4 hī servī sunt Aegyptiī.

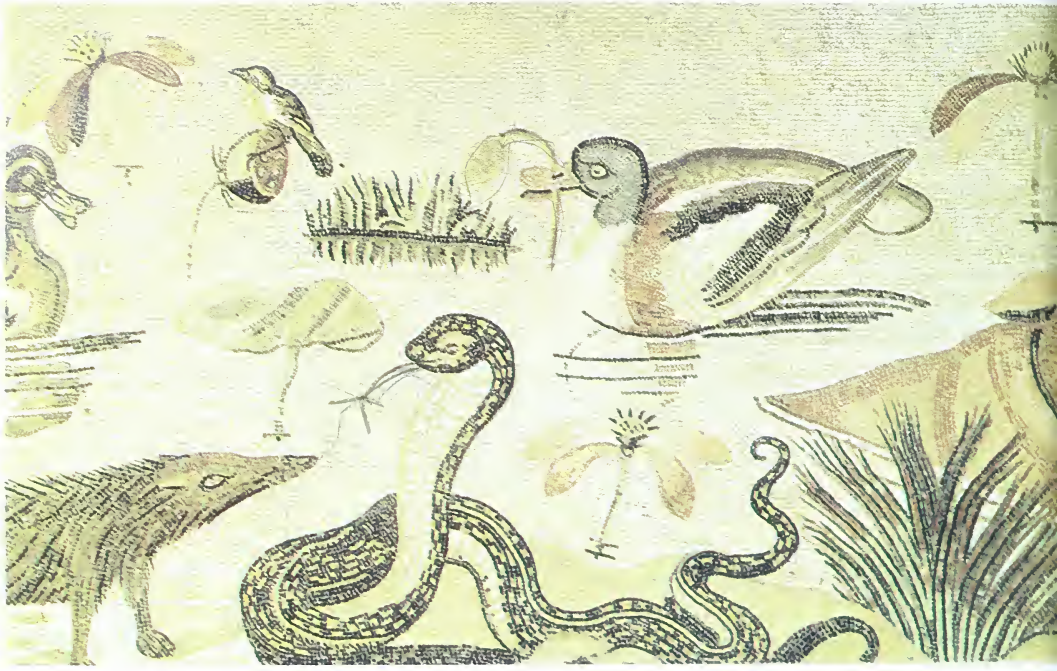
vēnātiō

Barbillus mē et Aristōnem ad vēnātiōnem invītāvit. māne vīlicum Phormiōnem cum multīs servīs ēmīsīt. Phormiō sēcum duōs haedōs dūxit. sed, ubi ē villā discēdēbāmus, astrologus Barbillī commōtus ad nōs cucurrit.

“domine, quō festinās?” clāmāvit. “cūr ē villā hodiē exīre vīs?” 5
“ad praedium meum iter facimus,” Barbillus astrologō respondit.
“sed, domine,” inquit astrologus, “immemor es. periculōsum est tibi hodiē ē villā exīre, quod hodiē sōl Arietī appropinquat.”
ubi hoc audīvī, astrologum dērīsī. Barbillus, quamquam eī

haedōs: haedus *kid, young goat* praedium *estate*
astrologus *astrologer* immemor *forgetful*
commōtus *alarmed, excited*

Arietī: Aries (the Ram) (sign of the zodiac)



crēdebāt, mē offendere nōluit. postquam rem diū cōgitāvit, 10
astrologō dīxit, “mihi placet exīre.”

astrologus igitur, ubi dominō persuādēre nōn potuit, amulētum,
quod Chaldaei fēcerant, eī dedit. tum sēcūrī ad praedīum Barbillī
contendimus. per partem praedīi flūmen Nīlus lēniter fluēbat.

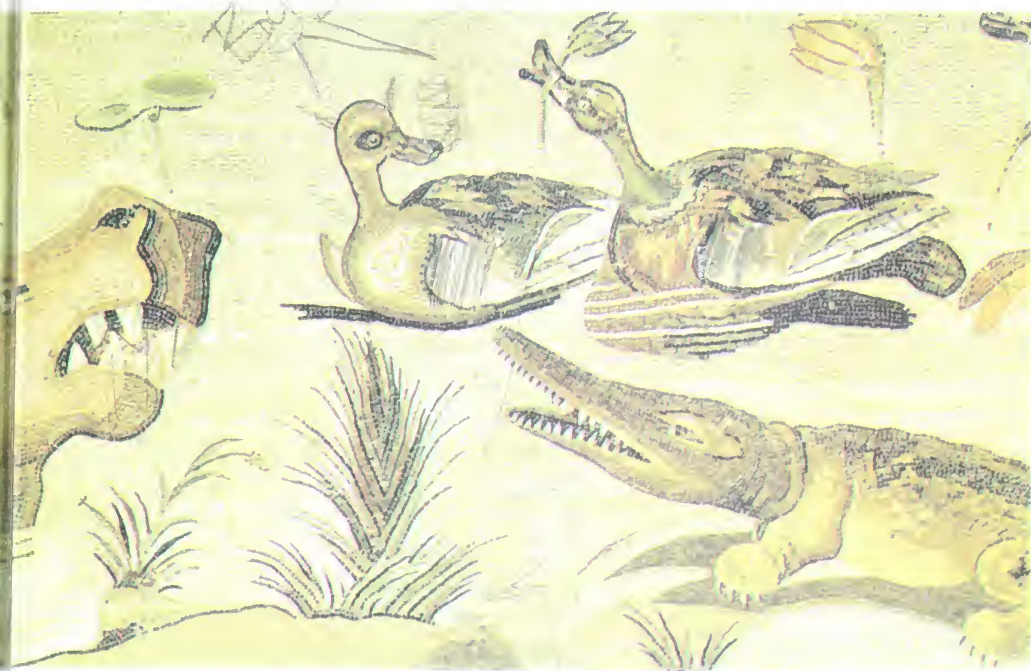
ubi illūc advēnimus, multōs servōs vīdimus collēctōs. in hāc 15
multitūdine servōrum erant nōnnūllī Aethiopes, quī hastās in
manibus tenēbant. prope Aethiopas stābat Phormiō, vīlicus
Barbillī.

Phormiō “salvē, domine!” inquit. “omnēs rēs tibi parāvīmus.
Aethiopes, quōs postulāvistī, īnstrūctī et parātī sunt. tibi scaphās 20
quoque decem comparāvīmus.”

“haedōs cecīdistis?” rogāvit Barbillus.

“duōs haedōs cecīdimus, domine,” respondit vīlicus. “cōs in
scaphās iam posuimus.”

tum Phormiō nōs ad rīpam flūminis dūxit, ubi scaphae, quās 25
comparāverat, dēligātae erant. postquam scaphās cōnscendimus,
ad palūdem, in quā crocodilī latēbant, cautē nāvīgāvimus. ubi
palūdī appropinquāvimus, aqua līmōsior fiēbat, harundīnesque
dēnsiōrēs. postquam ad mediam palūdem nāvīgāvimus, Barbillus
Phormiōnī signum dedit. haedōs Phormiō in aquam iniēcit. 30



Mosaic from Pompeii of the River Nile, with Egyptian animals, including a hippopotamus and a crocodile.

crocodilī, ubi haedōs caesōs cōspexērunt, praecipitēs cōs petēbant. sanguis haedōrum crocodilōs trahēbat. tum Aethiopes crocodilōs agitāre coepērunt. hastās ēmittēbant et crocodilōs interficiēbant. magna erat fortitūdō crocodilōrum, maior tamen perītia Aethiopum. mox multī crocodilī mortuī erant.

35

subitō ingentem clāmōrem audīvimus.

offendere	<i>displease</i>	dēligātae: dēligātus	<i>tied up, moored</i>
persuādere	<i>persuade</i>	palūdem: palūs	<i>marsh, swamp</i>
amulētum	<i>amulet, lucky charm</i>	crocodilī: crocodilus	<i>crocodile</i>
flūmen	<i>river</i>	limōsior: limōsus	<i>muddy</i>
lēniter	<i>gently</i>	fiēbat	<i>became</i>
collēctōs: collēctus	<i>assembled</i>	harundinēs: harundō	<i>reed</i>
īnstrūctī: īnstrūctus	<i>drawn up</i>	iniēcīt: inicere	<i>throw in</i>
scaphās. scapha	<i>small boat</i>	praecipitēs: praeceps	<i>headlong</i>
cecīdistis: caedere	<i>kill</i>	fortitūdō	<i>courage</i>
ripam: rīpa	<i>bank</i>	perītia	<i>skill</i>

Chaldaei	<i>Chaldeans, an ancient people of Babylon</i>
flūmen Nilus	<i>river Nile</i>
Aethiopes	<i>Ethiopians</i>

“domine!” clāmāvit Phormiō. “hippopotamus, quem Aethiopes ē palūde excitāvērunt, scapham Barbillī ēvertit. Barbillum et trēs servōs in aquam dēicēcit.”

quamquam ad Barbillum et ad servōs, quī in aquā natābant, 40
celeriter nāvigāvimus, crocodilī iam eōs circumvēnerant. hastās in
crocodilōs statim ēmīsimus. ubi crocodilōs dēpulimus, Barbillum et
ūnum servum servāre potuimus. sed postquam Barbillum ex aquā
trāximus, eum invēnimus vulnerātum. hasta, quam servus 45
ēmiserat, umerum Barbillī percusserat. Barbillus ā servō suō
graviter vulnerātus erat.

hippopotamus *hippopotamus*
ēvertit: ēvertere *overturn*

dēpulimus: dēpellere *drive off*
ā servō suō *by his own slave*

About the Language

- 1 In each of the following sentences, one or more people are being told to do something:

māter! **spectā** nāvem!

*Mother! **Look at** the ship!*

māter! pater! **spectāte** nāvem!

*Mother! Father! **Look at** the ship!*

Helena! **venī** ad mē!

*Helena! **Come** to me!*

servī! **venīte** ad mē!

*Slaves! **Come** to me!*

The form of the verb in boldface is known as the *imperative*. If only one person is being told to do something, the *imperative singular* is used; if more than one person, the *imperative plural* is used.

- 2 Compare the imperative forms with the infinitive:

	INFINITIVE	IMPERATIVE	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST CONJUGATION	portāre <i>to carry</i>	portā! <i>carry!</i>	portāte! <i>carry!</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION	docēre <i>to teach</i>	docē! <i>teach!</i>	docēte! <i>teach!</i>
THIRD CONJUGATION	trahere <i>to drag</i>	trahe! <i>drag!</i>	trahite! <i>drag!</i>
FOURTH CONJUGATION	audīre <i>to listen</i>	audī! <i>listen!</i>	audīte! <i>listen!</i>

3 Translate the following examples:

festīnā! respondē! labōrāte! curre!
date mihi pecūniam! sedē!

In each example, is the order being given to one person only, or to more than one?

4 Notice the way in which people are ordered *not* to do things:

SINGULAR:	nōlī currere!	<i>don't run!</i>
	nōlī cantāre!	<i>don't sing!</i>
PLURAL:	nōlīte festīnāre!	<i>don't hurry!</i>
	nōlīte trūdere!	<i>don't push!</i>

5 Translate the following examples:

tacēte! labōrā! tacē! currite!
nōlī dormīre! nōlīte pugnāre!

In each example, is the order being given to one person only, or to more than one?

Practicing the Language

1 Complete each sentence with the right word and then translate.

- astrologus, ubi dē vēnātiōne audīvit, Barbillō amulētum
(dedit, dedērunt)
- Barbillus et amīcus ad praedīum, quod situm erat prope Nīlum,
. (contendit, contendērunt)
- Aethiopes, quī hastās tenēbant, Barbillum (expectābat,
expectābant)
- multū servī, quōs vīlicus collēgerat, in ōrdinibus longīs
(stābat, stābant)
- ubi Barbillus Aethiopas servōsque īspexit, omnēs ad rīpam Nīli
iter (fēcit, fēcērunt)

situm: situs *situated*

- 2 This exercise is based on the story “diēs fēstus” on pages 122-23. Read the story again. Complete each of the sentences below with one of the following groups of words and then translate. Use each group of words once only.

postquam ad illum locum pervēnērunt
quod pompam vidēre volēbat
simulac p̄m̄us diēs v̄ris advēnit
postquam maritum vituperāvit
quamquam Galatēa eum saepe monuit
quod valdē irāta erat

- 1 sacerdotēs deam Īsidem ad portum ferre solēbant.
- 2 Galatēa Aristōnem iussit servum māne ēmittere et locum servāre
- 3 sed Aristō servum nōn ēmīsīt.
- 4 Aristō et Galatēa duōs iuvenēs ibi cōspexērunt.
- 5 Galatēa maritum vituperāre coēpit
- 6 Galatēa iuvenēs ēmōvit.

- 3 With the help of the table of nouns on pages 162–63 of the Review Grammar, complete the sentences of this exercise with the right form of each unfinished word and then translate. For example:

mercātor in viā stābat. amīcī mercātōr. . . salūtāvērunt.
mercātor in viā stābat. amīcī mercātōrem salūtāvērunt.

A merchant was standing in the street. The friends greeted the merchant.

- 1 puella stolam habēbat. stola puell. . . erat splendidissima.
- 2 servus leō. . . in silvā vīdit. leō dormiēbat.
- 3 puellae tabernam intrāvērunt. mercātor puell. . . multās stolās ostendit.
- 4 cīvēs rēgem laudāvērunt, quod rēx cīv. . . magnum spectāculum dederat.
- 5 serv. . . , quod dominum timēbant, fūgērunt.
- 6 mercātōrēs gemmās vēndēbant. gemmae mercātōr. . . Clēm̄entem dēlectāvērunt.
- 7 rēx mēcum cēnābat. ego rē. . . pōculum vīnī obtulī.
- 8 multī cīvēs in casīs habitābant. casae cīv. . . erant sordidae.
- 9 servī diligenter labōrāvērunt. serv. . . igitur praēmium dedī.

- 10 puer p̄territus ad templum cucurrit et iānuam templ. . .
pulsāvit.
11 rē. . . , quī in aulā sedēbat, tubam audīvit.
12 Salvius puer. . . , quī amphorās portābant, vehementer
vituperāvit.

About the Language

- 1 In each of the following sentences, somebody is being spoken to:

Aristō! quam stultus es!
quid accidit, **Barbille?**
contendite, **amīcī!**
cūr rīdētis, **cīvēs?**

Aristo! How stupid you are!
What happened, **Barbillus?**
Hurry, **friends!**
Why are you laughing, **citizens?**

The words in boldface are in the *vocative* case. If only one person is spoken to, the *vocative singular* is used; if more than one person, the *vocative plural* is used.

- 2 Compare the nominative singular and vocative singular of the second declension nouns like **servus** and **Salvius**:

NOMINATIVE

servus labōrat.
amīcus gladium habet.
Eutychus est in viā.
filius currit.
Salvius est irātus.
Holcōnius in lectō recumbit.

VOCATIVE

cūr labōrās, **serve?**
dā mihi gladium, **amīce!**
ubi sunt operae, **Eutychē?**
cūr curris, **filī?**
quid accidit, **Salvī?**
Holcōnī! surge!

Coin portraying Isis holding a billowing sail and standing before the Pharos at Alexandria.



- 3 In all other nouns, the vocative singular has the same form as the nominative singular:

NOMINATIVE

iuvenis clāmat.

Helena cibum cōnsūmit.

VOCATIVE

tacē, **iuvenis!**

placetne tibi, **Helena?**

- 4 The vocative plural always has the same form as the nominative plural:

NOMINATIVE

custōdēs dormiunt.

puerī in forō stant.

VOCATIVE

vōs semper dormītis, **custōdēs.**

ubi est theātrum, **puerī?**

The Worship of Isis

Isis was one of Egypt's oldest and most important goddesses. According to the Egyptians, she had loved and married the god Osiris, who appeared on earth in the form of a man. However, Osiris was murdered; his body was cut up and the pieces were scattered throughout the world. Overcome with grief, Isis set out on a search for the pieces of her husband's corpse. When at last she had found them all, a miracle took place; the dead Osiris was given new life and became the father of the child Horus. The Egyptians worshiped Isis for her power to give new life; they believed that just as she had given new life to Osiris, she was also responsible for the new life which appeared in springtime, or which followed the annual flooding of the Nile waters. They believed also that she offered a hope of life after death for those who became her followers.

One of the most important festivals of Isis was held at the beginning of spring. It took place on March 5th each year, when the sailing season opened and the large grain ships could once again set off safely across the Mediterranean to Rome. A statue of Isis was carried in procession down to the Great Harbor.

At the front of the procession came the dancers and musicians playing pipes, trumpets, and castanets. Female attendants scattered roses in the roadway and over the tightly packed crowd. The statue of Isis was carried high on the shoulders of her priests, so that everyone could get a glimpse of the goddess and her splendid robe. Next came more priests



Procession of priests and priestesses carrying sacred objects in the worship of Isis.

and more trumpeters and finally the high priest, wearing garlands of roses and shaking a sacred rattle known as a **sistrum** (like that held by the statue on page 125, and the last priestess in the procession above).

At the harbor, a special newly built ship was moored. Its stern was shaped like a goose's neck and covered with gold plate. First the high priest dedicated the ship to Isis and offered prayers; then the priests and people loaded it with gifts of spices and flowers; finally the mooring-ropes were unfastened and the wind carried the ship out to sea.

After the ceremony at the harbor, the statue of Isis was taken back to the temple. The spectators crowded into the open area in front of the temple, and the priests replaced the statue in the cella or sanctuary. Then a priest on a raised platform read to the people from a sacred book, and recited prayers for the safety of the Roman people and their emperor, and for sailors and ships.

The festival was noisy, colorful, and spectacular. Everybody had the day off, and although the religious ceremony was serious, it was also good entertainment. When the ceremony was over, the Alexandrians continued to enjoy themselves in a lively and high-spirited way. Their behavior was sometimes criticized, for example by the writer Philo who attacked them in these words: "They give themselves up to heavy drinking, noisy music, amusements, feasting, luxury, and rowdy behavior, eager for what is shameful and neglecting what is decent. They wake by night and sleep by day, turning the laws of nature upside down."

But in spite of these words of Philo, a festival of Isis was not just an excuse for a holiday. The worship of the goddess was taken seriously by



Wall painting for Herculaneum, showing a ceremony being performed in the worship of Isis. Notice four Nubian, or African, priests.

Blue faience hippopotamus from Egypt, now known as “William”: in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York City.



many Egyptians, who went regularly to her temple, prayed to her statue, and made offerings. Some of them, like Clemens in Stage 18, went further and became Īsiacī, or members of the special brotherhood of Isis; this involved a long period of preparation leading up to a secret initiation ceremony in the temple.

Those who wished to join the brotherhood of Isis had to begin with an act of repentance for the sins they had committed in the past; for example, they might offer a sacrifice, or fast from food, or go on a pilgrimage. The poet Juvenal mockingly describes the behavior of a Roman woman cleansing herself of her previous sins in the following unpleasant manner: “On a winter morning she’ll break the ice, lower herself into the river Tiber, and duck her head three times under the swirling waters. Then out she’ll crawl, naked and trembling, and creep on bleeding knees across the Campus Martius.”

In a Latin novel known as The Golden Ass, the chief character becomes a follower of Isis. He explains to his readers how he prepared to be admitted to the brotherhood. First his body was washed by the priests in a ceremony of baptism; next he was instructed about the sacred mysteries of the goddess, and forbidden to reveal them to anyone outside the brotherhood; then he fasted from food for ten days; and finally he underwent the initiation ceremony in the temple.

This was a ceremony of mystery and magic, full of strange and emotional experiences for the worshipers: those who were initiated believed that they had personally met Isis and that by dedicating themselves as her followers they could hope for life after death. But the exact details of the ceremony were kept strictly secret, as the narrator of The Golden Ass explains: “If you are interested in my story, you may want to know what was said and done in the temple. I would tell you if I were allowed to tell, you would learn if you were allowed to hear; but your ears and my tongue would suffer for your foolish curiosity.”

The worship of Isis spread from Alexandria across the ancient world. Temples to Isis have been found in places as far apart as London and the Black Sea area. A group of priests serving in a temple of Isis at Pompeii suffered a miserable death when the city was destroyed in the eruption of Vesuvius. They collected the sacred objects and treasures, and fled from the temple, but by then it was too late. Their bodies were found along the route of their flight across the city, each corpse surrounded by the valuables he had tried to save. The food shown in the picture on page 28 of Unit 1 was found in the temple.

Words and Phrases Checklist

amō, amāre, amāvī	<i>love, like</i>
caedō, caedere, cecīdī	<i>kill</i>
cārus, cāra, cārum	<i>dear</i>
castīgō, castīgāre, castīgāvī	<i>scold, nag</i>
cautē	<i>cautiously</i>
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī	<i>think, consider</i>
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī	<i>obtain</i>
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī	<i>finish</i>
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī	<i>take care of, supervise</i>
dē	<i>from, down from</i>
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī	<i>defend</i>
dulcis	<i>sweet</i>
fīlia, fīliae	<i>daughter</i>
fluō, fluere, flūxī	<i>flow</i>
forte	<i>by chance</i>
grātiās agō	<i>I thank, give thanks</i>
illūc	<i>there, to that place</i>
iter, itineris	<i>journey, trip</i>
locus, locī	<i>place</i>
māne	<i>in the morning</i>
neglegēns, <i>gen. neglegentis</i>	<i>careless</i>
nōvī	<i>I know</i>
perīculum, perīculī	<i>danger</i>
plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum	<i>very much (plūrimī very many)</i>
pompa, pompae	<i>procession</i>
poscō, poscere, poposcī	<i>demand, ask for</i>
sonitus, sonitūs	<i>sound</i>
stola, stolae	<i>long dress</i>
tot	<i>so many</i>
umerus, umerī	<i>shoulder</i>
vexō, vexāre, vexāvī	<i>annoy</i>
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī	<i>live</i>
vix	<i>hardly, scarcely</i>
vōx, vōcis	<i>voice</i>

Word Search

allocate, cogitation, curator, dulcet, fortuitous, itinerant, vex

- 1: the administrative director of an institution such as a museum
- 2: melodious; sweet
- 3: traveling or wandering
- 4: thoughtful consideration, meditation
- 5: to designate
- 6: to bother, annoy
- 7: happening by chance or accident

Stage 20



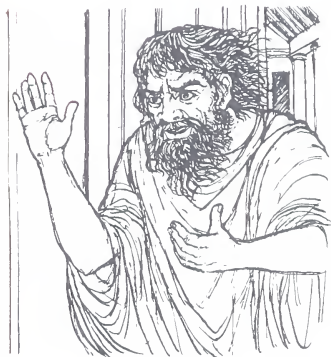
medicus



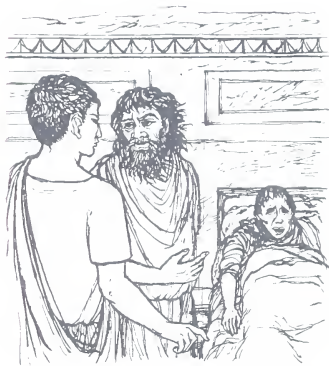
servī ad villam revēnērunt,
Barbillum portantēs.



ancillae prope lectum
stābant, lacrimantēs.



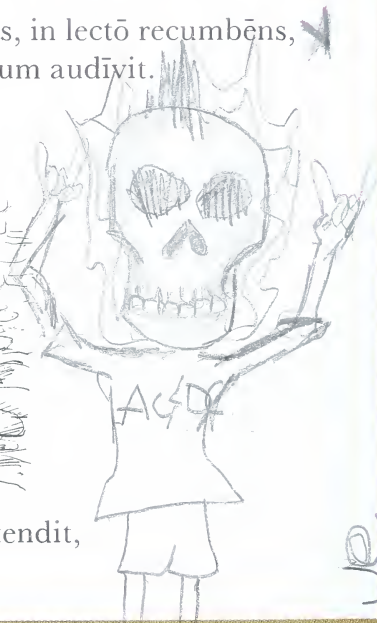
astrologus in cubiculum
irrūpit, clāmāns.



Barbillus, in lectō recumbēns,
astrologum audīvit.



Phormiō ad urbem contendit,
medicum quaerēns.



remedium astrologī

quattuor servī Barbillum exanimātum ad villam portāvērunt. multus sanguis ex vulnere effluēbat. Phormiō, quī servōs vulnerātōs sārāre solēbat, tunicam suam sciderat; partem tunicae circum umerum Barbillī dēligāverat. fluēbat tamen sanguis.

servī, quī Barbillum portābant, ubi cubiculum intrāvērunt, in lectum eum lēniter posuērunt. duae ancillae prope lectum stābant lacrimantēs. Phormiō ancillās ē cubiculō ēmīsīt et servōs ad sē vocāvit.

“necesse est vōbīs,” inquit “arāneās quaerere. magnum

remedium	<i>cure</i>
vulnere: vulnus	<i>wound</i>
effluēbat: effluere	<i>pour out, flow out</i>
sārāre	<i>heal, cure</i>
sciderat: scindere	<i>tear up</i>
dēligāverat: dēligāre	<i>bind, tie</i>
lectum: lectus	<i>bed</i>
arāneās: arānea	<i>spider's web, cobweb</i>



Medical instruments.

numerum arāneārum accipere volō. ubi sanguis effluit, nihil melius est quam arāneae!” 10

servī per tōtam villam contendēbant, arāneās quaerentēs; magnum clāmōrem tollēbant, Phormiō, postquam servī multās arāneās ad cubiculum tulērunt, in umerum dominī eas collocāvit.

astrologus ancillās lacrimantēs vidit, servōsque clāmantes audīvit. statim in cubiculum Barbillī irrūpit, exclāmāns: 15

“nōne hoc prōvidī? ō nefāstum diem! ō dominum infēlicem!”

“habēsne remedium?” rogāvī anxius.

“remedium certum habeo,” respondit astrologus. “facile est mihi Barbillum sārare, quod nōs astrologī sumus vērī medicī. remedium igitur Barbillō comparāre possum. est remedium, quod Chaldaei nōbīs trādidērunt. primō necesse est mihi mūrem nigrum capere. deinde mūrem captum dissecāre volō. postrēmō eum in umerum Barbillī pōnere volō. hoc solum remedium est.” 20

subitō, Barbillus, quī astrologum audīverat, oculōs aperuit. postquam mihi signum languidum dedit, in aurem meam susurrāvit, 25

“quaere Petrōnem, medicum bonum!”

Phormiōnem, quī Petrōnem bene nōverat, ē villā statim ēmisī. itaque vilicus medicum quaerēbat, astrologus mūrem. 30

numerum: numerus number

tollēbant: tollere raise

collocāvit: collocāre place

prōvidī: prōvidēre foresee

nefāstum: nefāstus terrible

certum: certus certain, infallible

vērī: verus true, real

medicī: medicus doctor

mūrem: mūs mouse

nigrum: niger black

captum: captus captured, caught

dissecāre cut up

languidum: languidus weak, feeble





Petrō

Petrō, postquam dē vulnere Barbillī audīvit, statim ad villam eius festināvit. ubi cubiculum intrāvit, astrologum vīdit, quī Barbillum s̄anāre temptābat. astrologus mūrem dissectum in vulnus domini collocābat, versum magicum recitāns. Petrō, simulac mūrem cōspexit, irātissimus erat; astrologum verberāvit et ē cubiculō expulit.

tum Petrō, postquam umerum Barbillī īspexit, spongiam cēpit et in acētō summersit. eam in vulnus collocāvit. Barbillus exanimātus reccidit.

Petrō ad mē sē vertit.

“necesse est tibi mē adiuvāre,” inquit. “difficile est mihi Barbillum s̄anāre. dē vitā eius dēspērō, quod tam multus sanguis etiam nunc effluit.”

itaque medicō auxilium dedī. Petrō, postquam aquam ferventem postulāvit, manūs forcipemque diligenter lāvit. deinde, forcipem

eius

his

acētō: acētum

megar

dissectum: dissectus

cut up, dismembered

summersit: sommergere

dip

versum magicum:

magic spell

reccidit: recidere

fall back

versus magicus

magic spell

ferventem: fervens

boiling

spongiam: spongia

sponge

forcipem: forceps

doctors' tongs, forceps

firmē tenēns, vulnus cum summā cūrā īnspexit. postquam hoc cōnfēcit, umerum Barbillī lāvit; cutem, quam hasta servī secuerat, perītē cōseruit. dēnique fasciam lātam cēpit, umerumque firmē dēligāvit.

mē ita monuit Petrō:

20

“nunc necesse est Barbillō in hōc lectō manēre; necesse est eī quiescere et dormīre. nātūra sōla eum sārāre potest, nōn astrologus.”

Petrōnī grātiās maximās ēgī. apud Barbillum diū manēbam, negōtium eius administrāns. Barbillus enim mihi sōlī cōnfidēbat. cotīdiē ad cubiculum, ubi iacēbat aeger, veniēbam. multōs sermōnēs cum Barbillō habēbam, prope lectum sedēns. postquam Barbillum familiārissimē cognōvī, ille mihi dē vītā suā multum nārrāvit. sine dubiō fortūna eum graviter afflīxerat.

25

firmē	<i>firmly</i>	monuit: monēre	<i>advise</i>
cutem: cutis	<i>skin</i>	quiescere	<i>rest</i>
perītē	<i>skillfully</i>	nātūra	<i>nature</i>
cōseruit: cōserere	<i>stitch</i>	familiārissimē: familiāriter	<i>closely, intimately</i>
fasciam: fascia	<i>bandage</i>	afflīxerat: affligere	<i>afflict, hurt</i>
lātam: lātus	<i>wide</i>		



Reconstruction of a Roman bed.

About the Language

1 Study the following sentences:

medicus, per forum **ambulāns**, Phormiōnem cōspexit.
*The doctor, **walking** through the forum, caught sight of Phormio.*

in mediā viā stābat Eutychus, **rīdēns**.
*In the middle of the street stood Eutychus, **laughing**.*

servī, Barbillum **portantēs**, villam intrāvērunt.
*The slaves, **carrying** Barbillus, entered the house.*

amīcī, in tabernā **dormientēs**, clāmōrem nōn audīvērunt.
*The friends, **sleeping** in the inn, didn't hear the noise.*

The words in boldface are *present participles*.

2 A present participle is used to describe a noun. For example, in the first sentence, **ambulāns** describes the doctor.

3 Translate the following examples:

- 1 astrologus in cubiculum irrūpit, lacrimāns.
- 2 puerī, per urbem currentēs, Petrōnem cōspexērunt.
- 3 sacerdōtēs, solemniter cantantēs, ad āram prōcessērunt.
- 4 Galatēa, in locō optimō stāns, pompam vidēre poterat.

Pick out the present participle in each sentence and find the noun which it describes.

4 A present participle changes its ending to agree with the noun it describes. For example:

SINGULAR:	Phormiō exiit, clāmāns .	<i>Phormio went out, shouting.</i>
PLURAL:	iuvenēs exiērunt, clāmantēs .	<i>The young men went out, shouting.</i>

5 Translate the following examples and pick out the present participle in each sentence:

- 1 fūr ē villā effūgit, cachinnāns.
- 2 mīlitēs, prō templō sedentēs, rēgem spectābant.
- 3 Eutychus, in lectō recumbēns, Clēmētem salūtāvit.
- 4 gladiātōrēs, in arēnā pugnantes, nūbem mirābilem vīdērunt.

Find the noun which each present participle is describing, and say whether each noun-and-participle pair is singular or plural.

6 A present participle is part of a verb. For example, **portantēs** (*carrying*) is part of the verb **portāre** (*to carry*); **dormientēs** (*sleeping*) is part of the verb **dormīre** (*to sleep*).

fortūna crūdēlis

Barbillus uxōrem fidēlem filiumque optimum habēbat. Plōtīna, uxor Barbillī, erat fēmina placida, quae domī manēbat contenta. Rūfus, filius Barbillī et Plōtīnae, erat iuvenis impiger. ad palaestram cum amīcīs saepe adībat; in dēsertīs equitāre solēbat, bēstiās ferōcissimās agitāns. aliquandō, sicut aliī iuvenēs, contentiōnēs cum parentibus habēbat. sed parentēs Rūfī eum maximē amābant, et ille eōs.

inter amīcōs Rūfī erat iuvenis Athēniēnsis, Eupor. hic Eupor ad urbem Alexandriā vēnerat et medicīnae studēbat. saepissimē domum Barbillī vīsītābat. tandem ad urbem Athēnās rediit, ubi artem medicīnae exercēbat. Eupor mox epistolam scrīpsit, in quā Rūfum parentēsque ad nūptiās suās invītāvit. Rūfus ad Graeciam ire valdē cupiēbat, sed Barbillus nāvigāre timēbat, quod hiems iam appropinquābat. astrologum suum igitur arcessīvit, et sententiam eius rogāvit. astrologus, postquam diū cōgitāvit, Rūfō parentibusque respōnsum dedit.

“rem periculōsam suscipitis. lūna Scorpīonem iam intrat. tūtius est vōbīs domī manēre.”

Barbillus et uxor astrologō, quī erat vīr doctissimū, libenter
crēdidērunt, sed Rūfū rem graviter fērēbat, ubi Barbillū aberat, 20
Rūfū saepe ad mātrem ībat, patrem dēplōrāns:

“pater stultissimū est, quod astrologō crēdit, astrologī nōn sūnt
nautae, nihil dē arte nāvīgandī sciunt.”

itaque Rūfū Plōtīnae persuāsit, sed patrī persuādere nōn
poterat, Barbillū obstinātū nāvīgāre nōluit, Rūfū igitur et Plōtīna 25
Barbillū domī reliquērunt, et ad Graeciā nāvīgābant, ubi tamen
nāvis, quae eōs vehēbat, Graeciae appropinquābat, ingēns
tempestās eam obruit, Rūfū ad lītus natāre poterat, sed Plōtīna,
quam Barbillū valdē amābat, in magnīs undīs periit.

ubi Barbillū dē naufragiō, in quō uxor perierat, audīvit, maximē 30
commōtus erat, filiū iterum vidēre nōlēbat, Rūfū, quamquam
domū redīre volēbat, patrī pārēbat, in Graeciā diū manēbat: sed
tandem iter ad Britanniam fēcit, ubi in exercitū Rōmānō militāvit.

domī	οἰκίας
impiger	ἐκτετακέντος
aliquandō	πολλοῖς χρόνοις
mediūānāe mediūāna	μεδίουανῆς
studēbat studēre	μαθήσκειν
artem: ars	τέχνην
nūptiās: nūptiae	γάμος
respōnsū	ἀπάντησις
tūtius est	ἐπιβλητότερον
nāvīgandī	πλοῦντος
vehēbat: vehere	φέρειν
tempestās	θύελλα
obruit: obruere	καταβλεῖν
commōtus	ἐκπληγμένος
pārēbat: pārere	παῖναι
exercitū: exercitus	στράτηξ

Athēnēnsis	Ἀθηναῖος
Scōpiūmon, Scōpiū	ἡ Σκόπιον ἐπὶ τῇ ἑσπερίᾳ

astrologus victor

astrologus, quī in villā Barbillī habitābat, erat vir ingenū prāvī. astrologus et Petrō inimicī erant. astrologus Syrius, medicus Graecus erat. Petrō artem medicīnae in urbe diū exercuerat. multī Alexandrīnī, quōs Petrō sānāverat, artem eius laudābant.

astrologus tamen in villā Barbillī habitābat, Petrō in urbe Alexandriā. facile igitur erat astrologō Barbillum vīsītāre. ad cubiculum, in quō dominus aeger iacēbat, saepe veniēbat. ubi Petrō aberat, astrologus in aurem dominī dīcēbat,

“in periculō maximō es, domine. Petrō medicus pessimus est. paucōs sānāvit. multōs aegrōs ad mortem mīsīt. num Petrōnī cōnfīdis? Petrō est vir avārissimus, nēmō est avārior quam ille. pecūniam tuam cupit. necesse est tibi eum ē villā expellere.”

Barbillus astrologum anxius audīvī, sed, quamquam dolor cotīdiē ingravēscēbat, medicō etiam crēdēbat, ubi medicum expellere Barbillus nōlēbat, astrologus cōsiliū cēpit. in cubiculum dominī māne irrūpit, clāmāns:

“domine! tibi nūntium optimum ferō. tē sānāre possum! dea Īsis, quae precēs meās semper audit, noctū somnium ad mē mīsīt. in somniō per viās urbis Alexandriāe ambulābam. subitō puerum vīdī in triviīs stāntēm. puer erat servus tuus, quem Aegyptiū in tumultū necāvērunt. mihi dē medicāmentō exquisītissimō nārrāvit.”

Barbillus, ubi hoc audīvīt, astrologō sē tōtum trādīdit. ille igitur, postquam medicāmentum composuīt, umerum dominī aperuit et ūnixit. sed medicāmentum astrologī pessimum erat. ingravēscēbat vulnus Barbillī.

astrologus, ubi hoc sēnsit, ē villā fūgit perterritus. Barbillus, dē vītā suā dēspērāns, mē ad cubiculum arcessīvit.

“mī Quīnte,” inquit, in aurem susurrāns, “nōlī lacrimāre! moritūrus sum. id plānē intellegō. necesse est omnibus mortem obīre. hoc ūnum ā tē postulō. filium meum in Britannīā quaere! refer eī hanc epistolam! ubi Rūfum ē villā expulī irātus, eī magnam iniūriam intulī. nunc tandem veniam ā Rūfō petō.”

ubi hoc audīvī, Petrōnem arcessere volēbam, sed Barbillus obstinātus recūsābat. arcessīvī tamen illum. sed ubi advēnit, Barbillus iam mortuus erat.

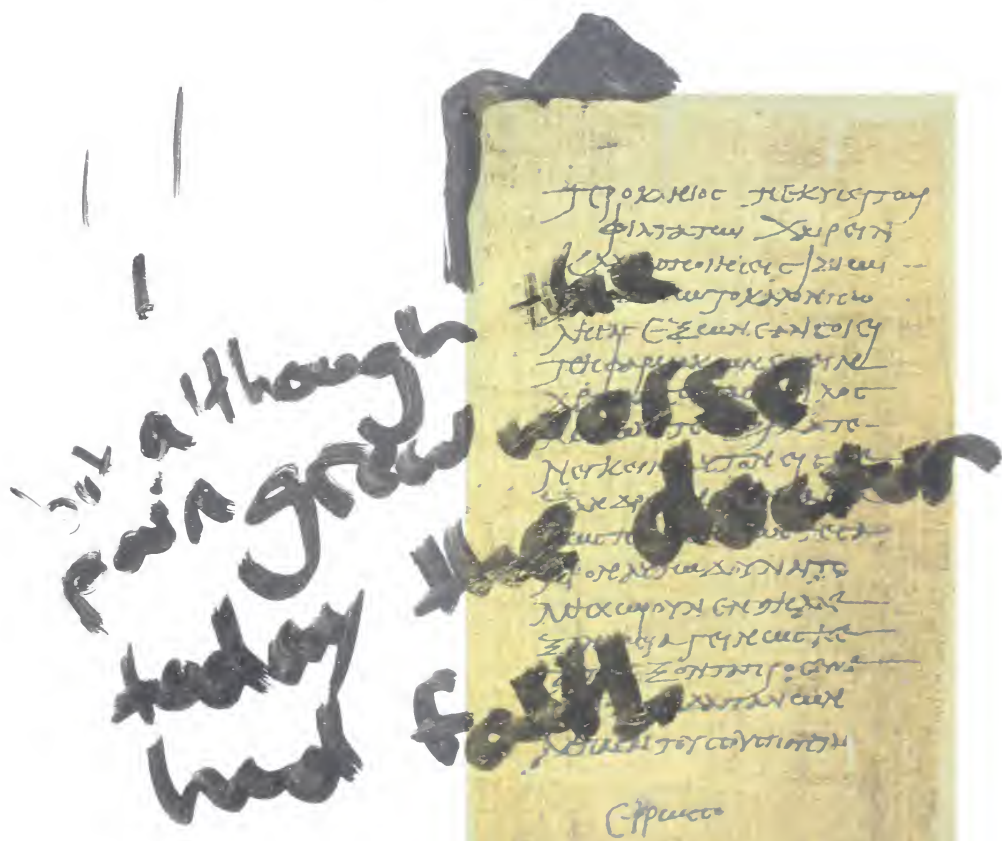
Vir ingenii pravi
 dolor
 ingravescēbat
 ingravescere
 etiam
 noctū
 somnium
 medicamentū
 medicamentum
 exquisitissimō: exquisitū
 composuit: contempnere
 ūnixit: ungere
 obire
 refer: referre
 iniūriam intulit
 iniūriam interre

a man of evil character
 pain

even at night
 sleep
 medicine

medicine
 precious
 had regard, no regard of
 applied, anointed
 pass
 refer, refer

to do violence to or to bury



Papyrus letter from Alexandria,
 written in Greek in the first
 century A.D.

About the Language

- 1 You have now met various forms of the Latin word for *him, her, them*, etc.:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	GENITIVE	DATIVE	ACCUSATIVE	DATIVE	ACCUSATIVE
MASCULINE	eius	eī	eum	eīs	eōs
FEMININE			eam		eās

Barbillus mē ad cēnam invītāvit. ego ad vīllam **eius** contendī.
*Barbillus invited me to dinner. I hurried to **his** house.*

operae celeriter convēnērunt. Eutychus **eīs** fūstēs trādīdit.
*The thugs assembled quickly. Eutychus handed out clubs **to them**.*

Clēmēns officīnam intrāvit. Eutychus **eum** salūtāvit.
*Clemens entered the workshop. Eutychus greeted **him**.*

servī ingentēs erant. Clēmēns tamen **eōs** neglēxit.
*The slaves were huge. However, Clemens ignored **them**.*

2 Further examples:

- 1 Barbillus in cubiculō iacēbat. Quīntus eī vīnum dedit.
- 2 Galatēa marītum castīgābat. tōta turba eam audīvit.
- 3 puellae suāviter cantābant. Aristō eās laudāvit.
- 4 ubi Petrō advēnit, Phormiō eum ad cubiculum dūxit.

Practicing the Language



1 Translate into English:

Aristō: Galatēa! fortūna nōbīs favet! iuvenis Narcissus, quem heri vīdimus, Helenae dōnum mīsit. dōnum, quod iuvenis mīsit, pretiōsissimum est. dōnum mihi quoque mīsit. iuvenis Narcissus Helenam nostram amat.

Galatēa: quid dīcis, asine? iuvenis, quī prope nōs stābat, filiae nostrae dōnum mīsit? ēheu! marītum habeō, quī nihil intellegit. Narcissus humilis est. māter Narcissī est Aegyptia.

Aristō: fēminam, quam vituperās, nōn nōvī, sed Narcissum bene nōvī, iuvenis optimus est, quem omnēs laudant.

Galatēa: sed pater Narcissī est caupō, taberna, quam tenet, sordida est, vīnum, quod vēndit, pessimum est.

Aristō: tabernam patris nōn floccī faciō. Narcissus ipse probus et benignus est, iuvenis etiam liberālis est. dōnum, quod mihi mīsit, libellus est. (*Aristō libellum īnspicere incipit.*) ēheu! Narcissus poēta est, suōs versūs scurrīlēs mihi mīsit.

Galatēa: fortūna nōbīs favet! nunc marītus meus illī iuvenī Helenam dare nōn vult.

humilis *low-born, of low class*

libellus *little book*

incipit: incipere *begin*

2 Study the following document, and then answer the questions at the end.

testāmentum Tiberiī Claudii Barbili

ego Tiberium Claudium Rufum heredem meum facio. si Rufus, filius meus, mortuus est, ego Quintum Caecilium Iucundum heredem meum facio: do, lego Quinto Caecilio Iucundo, amico meo, praedium meum, quod prope Nilum situm est.

Marcum et Philadelphum, servos meos, libero, quod mihi fideliter servierunt: do, lego Marco viginti aureos, Philadelpho quindecim. Annam, quae ornatrix uxoris meae erat, libero, quod uxori meae bene serviebat. ceteris servis, qui in villa mea plus quam quinque annos habitaverunt, novas tunicas do.

do, lego Helenae, filiae Aristonis et Galatae, gemmas quas a mercatore Arabi emi. Aristoni, patri Helenae, tragoedias quas ipse mihi scripsit reddo. Aristo amicus optimus, poeta pessimus est.

Phormioni, vilico meo, qui me adiuvit, postquam iste servus me vulneravit, libertatem do. Petroni medico, qui me sanare temptavit, quingentos aureos lego. Petro medicus optimus est, ego vir stultissimus. scelesto astrologo, qui mihi mortem intulit, neque libertatem neque quidquam aliud do. necesse est Quinto, amico meo, eum punire.

mando Quinto Caecilio Iucundo curam funeris mei. Quintum iubeo monumentum mihi ponere.

Tiberius Claudius Barbillus  signavit.

signatores *C. Longinus Aquila* 

Q. Mucius Augustalis 

Iulius Philoxenos 

L. Pullius Verecundus 

C. Longinus Castor 

T. Vibius Zosimus 

Iulius Gemellus veteranus 

testāmentum	<i>will</i>
hērēdem: hērēs	<i>heir</i>
sī	<i>if</i>
dō, lēgō	<i>I give and bequeath</i>
fidēlīter	<i>faithfully</i>
serviērunt: servīre	<i>serve as a slave</i>
plūs	<i>more</i>
quīngentōs: quīngentī	<i>five hundred</i>
mortem intulit: mortem īferre	<i>bring death upon</i>
quidquam aliud	<i>anything else</i>
mandō: mandāre	<i>entrust</i>
fūneris: fūnus	<i>funeral</i>
signāvit: signāre	<i>sign, seal</i>
signātōrēs: signātor	<i>witness</i>

- 1 Who is Barbillus' heir?
- 2 What is to happen if the heir chosen by Barbillus is dead?
- 3 What legacy does Barbillus leave to Quintus?
- 4 What instructions does Barbillus give about his slaves?
- 5 What does Barbillus leave to Helena?
- 6 What does he leave to Aristo? What is Barbillus' opinion of Aristo?
- 7 Barbillus mentions three people besides Quintus who took care of him when he was ill. What does he give to each of them?
- 8 In his will, Barbillus asks Quintus to do three things. What are they?
- 9 Judging from this will, what sort of person do you think Barbillus was?
- 10 Barbillus leaves nothing to Aristo's wife. Suggest possible reasons for this.



Medicine and Science

Soon after its foundation, Alexandria became famous as a center of science and learning. The Museum and its library, which were set up and financed by the Greek rulers of Egypt, attracted intelligent men from all over the Greek world, who quickly began to make discoveries in all the sciences, including medicine. A good beginning had already been made in medicine by the Greek, Hippocrates, who had attempted to remove magic and superstition from the treatment of disease by observing his patients' symptoms carefully and trying to discover their causes. Hippocrates, who lived on the island of Cos in the fifth century B.C., was rightly regarded as the founder of medical science. He and his followers pledged themselves to high standards of conduct in a famous oath known as the Hippocratic oath. Part of it reads as follows:

“Into whatever houses I enter, I will go into them for the benefit of the sick, and will abstain from every voluntary act of mischief and corruption. Whatever in my professional practice I see or hear, which ought not to be spoken abroad, I will not divulge.”

But Hippocrates and his Greek followers usually investigated only the surface of the body and not its interior; this was because the Greeks felt the idea of dissecting a body was disagreeable and perhaps wicked. The Egyptians, however, with their ancient custom of mummifying corpses, had a somewhat different attitude to the body, and dissections of corpses were frequently performed by Egyptian doctors. Alexandria was therefore a good place for studying anatomy. Herophilus, the most famous Alexandrian anatomist, gave a detailed description of the brain, explained the differences between tendons and nerves, arteries and veins, and described the optic nerve and the eye, including the retina. He also measured the frequency of the pulse and used this to diagnose fever. Like earlier doctors, he laid great stress on the importance of hygiene, diet, exercise, and bathing.

In addition to general advice of this kind, an experienced doctor of the first century A.D. would treat minor ailments with drugs, only some of which would be effective. The juice of the wild poppy, which contains opium, was used to relieve pain. Unwashed sheep's wool, containing lanolin, was often applied to wounds and swellings to soothe the irritation. Many prescriptions, however, would have been useless. For

example, one account of the treatment of chilblains begins: "In the first place the chilblains are to be fomented thoroughly with boiled turnips" Any benefit felt by the patient would be due not to the turnips, but to the heat of the fomentation or the patient's own belief that the treatment would do him or her good.

Some prescriptions are rather alarming, such as this for severe toothache: "When a tooth decays, there is no great need to remove it, but if the pain compels its removal, a peppercorn or an ivy berry should be inserted into the cavity of the tooth, which will then split and fall out in bits."

Minor surgery was regularly practiced: "Tonsils are covered by a thin layer of skin. If they become hardened after inflammation, they should be scratched around with a finger and drawn out. If they cannot be drawn out in this way they should be gripped with a hook and cut out with a scalpel. The hollow should then be swilled out with vinegar and the wound smeared with something to check the blood."

Fractures and wounds presented greater problems. Nevertheless, doctors were able to make incisions, tie veins and arteries, reset broken bones with splints, and stitch up wounds. Difficult or very delicate operations were sometimes attempted, such as operations on the eye to relieve cataracts. Amputation of limbs was undertaken as a last resort.

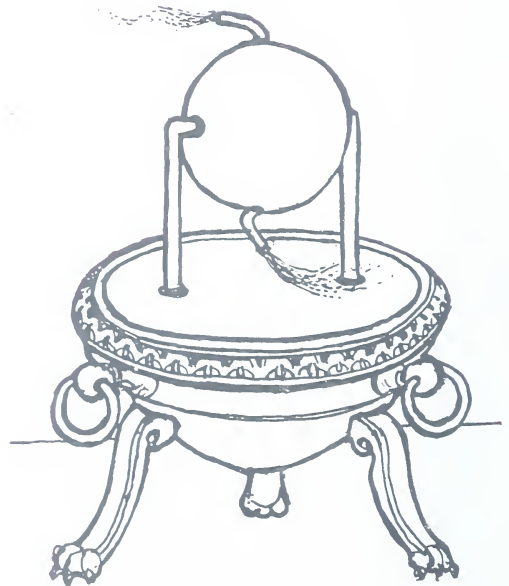
Like Petro in the story on page 143, Greek doctors insisted on high standards of cleanliness in operations, to reduce the risk of infection. Although the quality of medical treatment in the ancient world would naturally vary considerably from one doctor to another, it is probably true that the standards of the best doctors were not improved upon in the western world until about a hundred years ago.

Astronomy, which had begun in Babylon, developed further at Alexandria. There the first attempts were made to calculate the distances between the Earth and the Sun, and between the Earth and the Moon. The idea was also put forward that the Earth was round, rotated on its axis and, with the other planets, circled the Sun. After the end of the western Roman Empire in the fifth century A.D., this idea was forgotten until Copernicus rediscovered it in the fifteenth century. It is remarkable that Alexandrian astronomers devised their theories and made their calculations without the aid of telescopes or other accurate instruments.

The Museum was also famous for the study of mathematics. Euclid, who worked at Alexandria in the third century B.C., wrote a book known as the Elements, in which he summarized all previous knowledge of



A reconstruction of the Great Hall of the ancient Library of Alexandria.



Hero's steam turbine.

geometry; it continued to be used as a school textbook almost down to the present day. In applying the mathematical knowledge to the world around them, the Greeks at Alexandria reached some very accurate conclusions. For example, Eratosthenes calculated that the circumference of the Earth was 24,662 miles; this is remarkably close to the true figure of 24,857.

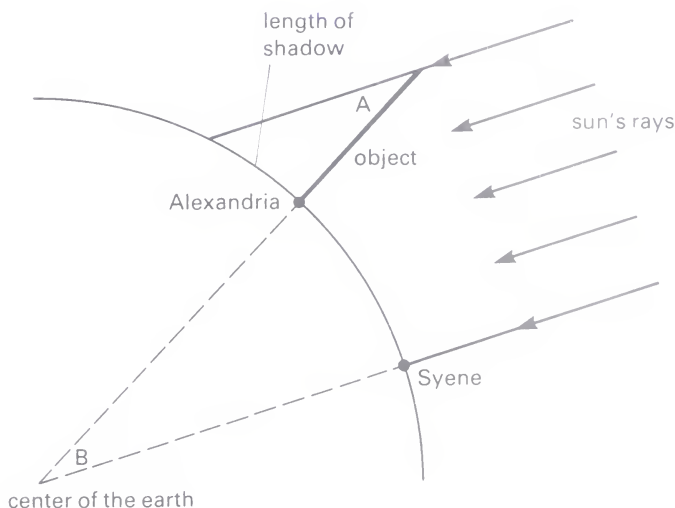
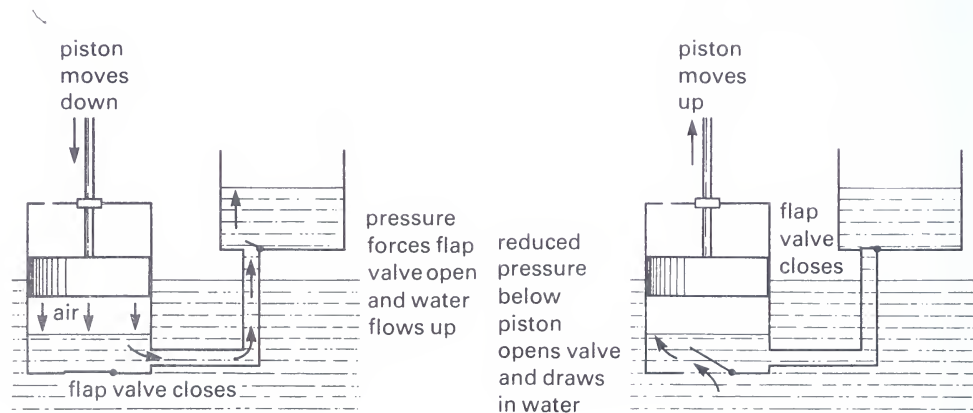


Diagram of Eratosthenes' experiment

At noon, when Eratosthenes had calculated that the sun was directly overhead in Syene, he measured the length of the shadow of an object in Alexandria. From this he could calculate the angle A between the sun's rays and the object. Since the sun's rays are parallel, by simple geometry angle B is the same size as angle A. Knowing angle B and the distance between Syene and Alexandria (which was north of Syene), he was able to calculate the circumference of the earth.

Hero of Alexandria invented the first steam turbine, in the form of a toy, in which a hollow ball was mounted on two brackets on the lid of a vessel of boiling water. One bracket was hollow and conducted steam from the vessel into the ball. The steam escaped from the ball by means of two bent pipes, thus creating a force which made the ball spin around. He also made a hollow altar, where, when a fire was lit, hot air streamed through four bent pipes to make puppets dance.

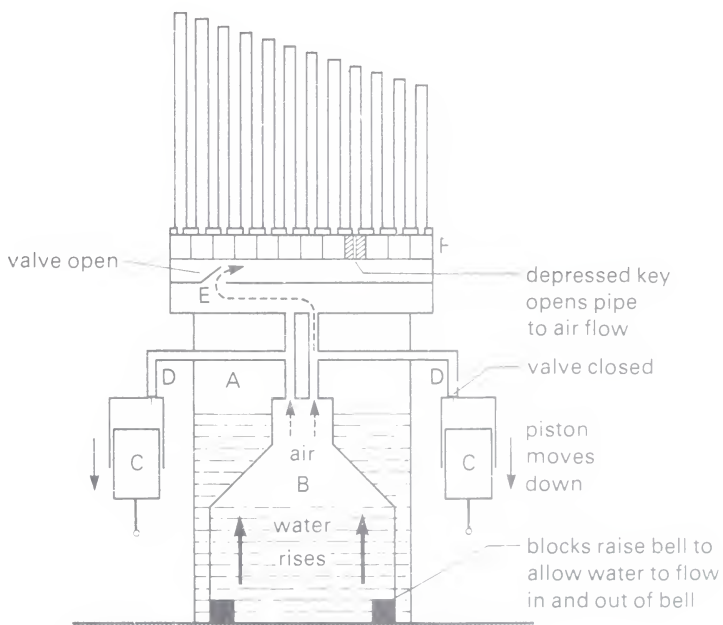
Ctesibius, an engineer who lived and worked in the Museum, invented the flap valve and force pump.



Ctesibius' pump for raising water to a higher chamber

This technology was used by Ctesibius in the original musical organ, which he called *hydraulis*, meaning “water-flute” in Greek—the source of the word *hydraulics*. When the pistons (C) move up, they pump air into the central bell (B), displacing some of the water into the tank (A). When the pistons move down again, flap valves (D) fall closed; the water in the bell (B) rises to find its level and forces the air through the flap valve (E) which opens, and to the pipes above the keyboard (F).

The Alexandrians did not take advantage of their scientific discoveries to build complicated and powerful machines for use in industry. Perhaps they felt they had no need for such machines, as they had a large work-force of slaves and free men available; perhaps they regarded trade and manufacturing as less dignified than scientific research and investigation; or perhaps they were prevented from developing industrial machinery by their lack of technical skills, such as the ability to make large metal containers and hold them together with screws and welds. Whatever the reason, some of the discoveries made by the Alexandrians were not put to practical use until several centuries later.



Ctesibius' water organ.

Words and Phrases Checklist

adeō, adīre, adī				<i>approach, go up to</i>	
arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī				<i>summon, send for</i>	
ars, artis				<i>art, skill</i>	
auris, auris				<i>ear</i>	
collocō, collocāre, collocāvī				<i>place, put</i>	
crūdēlis				<i>cruel</i>	
dēnique				<i>at last, finally</i>	
doctus, docta, doctum				<i>educated, learned</i>	
domus, domūs				<i>home</i>	
equitō, equitāre, equitāvī				<i>ride (a horse)</i>	
hiems, hiemis				<i>winter</i>	
īferō, īferre, intulī				<i>bring in, bring on</i>	
irrupō, irrumpere, irrūpī				<i>burst in</i>	
lātus, lāta, lātum				<i>wide</i>	
līberō, līberāre, līberāvī				<i>free, set free</i>	
lūna, lūnae				<i>moon</i>	
medicus, medicī				<i>doctor</i>	
mors, mortis				<i>death</i>	
oculus, oculī				<i>eye</i>	
parēns, parentis				<i>parent</i>	
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī				<i>persuade</i>	
pessimus, pessima, pessimum				<i>very bad, worst</i>	
precēs, precum				<i>prayers</i>	
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī				<i>leave</i>	
remedium, remediī				<i>cure</i>	
sermō, sermōnis				<i>conversation</i>	
sīcut				<i>like</i>	
tam				<i>so</i>	
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī				<i>try</i>	
vulnus, vulneris				<i>wound</i>	
ūnus	<i>one</i>	sex	<i>six</i>	vīgintī	<i>twenty</i>
duo	<i>two</i>	septem	<i>seven</i>	trīgintā	<i>thirty</i>
trēs	<i>three</i>	octō	<i>eight</i>	quadrāgintā	<i>forty</i>
quattuor	<i>four</i>	novem	<i>nine</i>	quīnquāgintā	<i>fifty</i>
quīnque	<i>five</i>	decem	<i>ten</i>		

Word Search

aural, domesticate, imprecation, irremediable, latitude, pessimist, relinquish

1 : extent, breadth

2 : to tame

3 : pertaining to the ear

4 : one who habitually expects the worst

5 : a curse

6 : to abandon, leave behind

7 : unable to be corrected; incurable

Language Information Section

PART ONE: Review Grammar

Nouns

1 You have learned five of the six cases of the noun:

	<i>first declension</i>	<i>second declension</i>		
<i>gender</i>	f.	m.	m.	n.
SINGULAR				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puella	servus (<i>voc. serve</i>)	puer	templum
<i>genitive</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	templī
<i>dative</i>	puellae	servō	puerō	templō
<i>accusative</i>	puellam	servum	puerum	templum
<i>ablative (not yet learned)</i>				
PLURAL				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	(<i>not yet learned</i>)
<i>genitive</i>	puellārum	servōrum	puerōrum	
<i>dative</i>	puellis	servīs	puerīs	
<i>accusative</i>	puellās	servōs	puerōs	
<i>ablative (not yet learned)</i>				

Notes

- 1 The vocative case is used to name someone who is being spoken to directly, e.g. “**ubi es, serve?**” “*Where are you, slave?*”
- 2 Some 2nd declension nouns like **puer** have a nominative and vocative singular ending in **-er**. All their other cases are formed with endings like those of **servus**.
- 3 1st declension nouns like **puella**, **pecūnia**, and **via** are usually feminine. 2nd declension nouns are usually either masculine like **servus**, **cibus**, and **equus**, or neuter like **templum** and **aedificium**. 3rd declension nouns may be either masculine like **mercātor**, or feminine like **urbs**, or neuter like **nōmen**. (Sometimes in English the

third declension

m.	m.	m./f.	m.	f.	n.	gender
						SINGULAR
mercātor	leō	cīvis	rēx	urbs	nōmen	nominative and vocative
mercātōris	leōnis	cīvis	rēgis	urbis	nōminis	genitive
mercātōrī	leōnī	cīvī	rēgī	urbī	nōminī	dative
mercātōrem	leōnem	cīvem	rēgem	urbem	nōmen	accusative
						not yet learned: ablative
						PIURAL
mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs		nominative and vocative
mercātōrum	leōnum	cīvium	rēgum	urbium		genitive
mercātōribus	leōnibus	cīvibus	rēgibus	urbibus		dative
mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs		accusative
						not yet learned: ablative

reasons for the gender of some of these nouns may not be clear, for example, **pecūnia** may not seem to us particularly feminine, nor **cibus** particularly masculine.

- 4 Study the two nouns **templum** and **nōmen**. Notice that the form **templum** can be either nominative or accusative; so can the form **nōmen**. This is because **templum** and **nōmen** are *neuter*. Every neuter noun uses the same form for both its nominative and accusative singular. (You have not yet learned the nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns.)

- 2 Translate each sentence, then change the words in boldface from the singular to the plural, and translate again. Notice that in these examples *two* words in each sentence have to be changed.

For example: **agricola** in fundō **labōrābat**.

*The **farmer** was **working** on the farm.*

This becomes: **agricolae** in fundō **labōrābant**.

*The **farmers** were **working** on the farm.*

1 **servus** ferrum ē terrā **effodiēbat**.

2 **mercātor** ad urbem **contendēbat**.

3 **ancilla** in templō manēre **volēbat**.

4 **centuriō** fūrem ferōciter **pulsābat**.

5 **lībertus** saepe dē rēge Cogidubnō **audiēbat**.

6 cūr **canis** prope iānuam **lātrābat**?

7 **domina** coquum in culīnā **expectābat**.

8 **hospes** cibum **gustābat**.

9 **custōs** servōs **spectābat**.

10 **servus** ad āream celeriter **currēbat**.

- 3 Translate each sentence, then change the words in boldface from the plural to the singular, and translate again.

For example: **centuriōnēs** rēgem **salūtābant**.

*The **centurions** were **greeting** the king.*

This becomes: **centuriō** rēgem **salūtābat**.

*The **centurion** was **greeting** the king.*

1 **leōnēs** aquam **bibēbant**.

2 **servī** epistolās longās **scrībēbant**.

3 **ancillae** prope iānuam **stābant**.

4 **pictōrēs** Herculem **pingēbant**.

5 **mātrōnae** multās ancillās **habēbant**.

6 **candidātī** in forō **ambulābant**.

7 **iuvenēs** in viā **stābant**.

8 **fēminae** cum prīncipibus **sedēbant**.

9 **nāvēs** magnō saxō **appropinquābant**.

10 **servī** ursam **custōdiēbant**.

- 4 Translate sentences 1–10, then change their meaning by turning each nominative into an accusative, and each accusative into a nominative, and then translate again.

For example: *dōminus ancillās salūtāvit.*
The master greeted the slave-girls.

This becomes: *ancillae dōminum salūtāvērunt.*
The slave-girls greeted the master.

Notice that in some sentences, as in the example above, you will have to change the verb from singular to plural or from plural to singular.

- 1 *puerī leōnēs audīvērunt.*
- 2 *puella coquum amāvit.*
- 3 *Belimicus ursam cōspexit.*
- 4 *barbarī milītēs necāvērunt.*
- 5 *rēx cīvēs laudāvit.*
- 6 *fēminae mercātōrem vīsītāvērunt.*
- 7 *mātrōnam pictor spectāvit.*
- 8 *Rōmānōs Britannī interfēcērunt.*
- 9 *imperātor honōrāvit victōrēs.*
- 10 *nautam vulnerāvit mīles.*

- 5 Translate the following sentences, which contain several examples of the dative case. If you are not sure whether a word is dative singular or plural, use the table in paragraph 1 for help.

- 1 *imperātor libertīs et cīvibus spectāculum dedit.*
- 2 *Salvius vilicō et agricolae canem ostendit.*
- 3 *puer iuvenibus et senī rem nārrāvit.*
- 4 *ancillae mercātōrī et milītibus triclinium parāvērunt.*
- 5 *coquus dominō et amicīs respondit.*
- 6 *nūntius civī et nautae crēdebatur.*

In Latin, dative forms often appear with verbs of “giving,” “showing,” and “telling” (e.g. above, **dedit**, **ostendit**, and **nārrāvit**). What other kinds of verbs with the dative are illustrated by the sentences above?

6 From Stage 17 onwards, you learned the *genitive* case:

puer ad tabernam **Clēmentis** cucurrit.

The boy ran to Clemens' store.

spectātōrēs clāmābant, sed rēx clāmōrēs **spectātōrum** nōn audīvit.

The spectators were shouting, but the king did not hear the shouts of the spectators.

iuvenis vōcem **fēminae** laudāvit.

The young man praised the woman's voice.

Further examples:

1 Quīntus, quī prope nāvem stābat, vōcēs nautārum audīvit.

2 Īsis erat dea. sacerdōtēs ad templum deae cotīdiē ībant.

3 magna multitūdō mīlitum in triviīs nōbīs obstābat.

4 in villā amīcī meī saepe cēnābam.

5 clāmōrēs puerōrum senem vexābant.

6 prīncipēs ad aulam rēgis quam celerrimē contendērunt.

7 umerus fabrī erat sordidus.

8 mīlitēs quī appropinquābant vōcēs cīvium audīre poterant.

Adjectives

- 1 In Stages 14 and 18, you learned how an adjective changes its endings to agree with the noun it describes in:
- 1 case,
 - 2 number, *and*
 - 3 gender.
- 2 Most adjectives in Latin belong either to the 1st and 2nd declension or to the 3rd declension. The adjective **bonus** *good* is one that belongs to the 1st and 2nd declension:

	singular			plural		
	masculine (2nd decl.)	feminine (1st decl.)	neuter (2nd decl.)	masculine (2nd decl.)	feminine (1st decl.)	neuter (2nd decl.)
nominative and vocative	bonus (voc. bone)	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	(not
genitive	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	yet
dative	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	learned)
accusative	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	
ablative	(not yet learned)					

Compare the endings of **bonus** with the endings of the 1st and 2nd declension nouns **servus**, **puella**, and **templum** listed on p. 162.

3 The adjective **fortis** (*brave*) is one that belongs to the 3rd declension:

	<i>singular</i>		<i>plural</i>	
	<i>masc. and fem. (3rd decl.)</i>	<i>neuter (3rd decl.)</i>	<i>masc. and fem. (3rd decl.)</i>	<i>neuter (3rd decl.)</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	fortis		fortēs	
<i>genitive</i>	fortis	(not	fortium	(not
<i>dative</i>	fortī	yet	fortibus	yet
<i>accusative</i>	fortem	learned)	fortēs	learned)
<i>ablative (not yet learned)</i>				

Compare the endings of **fortis** with the endings of the 3rd declension noun **cīvis** listed on p. 163.

4 With the help of paragraphs 2 and 3, find the Latin words for *good* and *brave* in each of the following sentences:

- 1 The merchant praised his good daughter.
- 2 The king greeted the brave soldiers.
- 3 The good men were working hard.
- 4 A brave woman resisted the enemy.
- 5 The jewels of good merchants are genuine.
- 6 The citizens gave their support to the brave soldiers.
- 7 The enemy could not break the swords of the brave young men.

Comparison of Adjectives (i.e. comparative and superlative forms)

1 In Stage 8 of Unit 1, you learned the *superlative* form of the adjective:

Clēmēns est **laetissimus**.
*Clemens is **very happy**.*

coquus est **stultissimus**.
*The cook is **very stupid**.*

2 In Stage 10, you learned the *comparative* form:

gladiātor erat **fortior** quam leō.
*The gladiator was **braver** than a lion.*

estis **stultiōrēs** quam asinī!
*You are **more stupid** than donkeys!*

3 Study the difference between the positive (nominative and accusative), comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives:

		comparative	superlative
positive		nominative	nominative
nominative	accusative		
singular	singular		
masculine	masculine		
longus long	longum	longior longer	longissimus longest, very long
pulcher beautiful	pulchrum	pulchrior more beautiful	pulcherrimus most/very beautiful
fortis brave	fortem	fortior braver	fortissimus bravest, very brave
fēlix lucky	fēlicem	fēlicior luckier	fēlicissimus luckiest, very lucky

- 4 The comparative and superlative forms change their endings in the usual way to indicate case, number, and gender:

nominative: leō **saevissimus** intrāvit.

*A **very fierce** lion entered.*

accusative: leōnem **saevissimum** interfēcī.

*I killed a **very fierce** lion.*

singular: Dumnorix est **callidior** quam Belimicus.

*Dumnorix is **smarter** than Belimicus.*

plural: Rēgnēnsēs sunt **callidiōrēs** quam Cantiaci.

*The Regnenses are **smarter** than the Cantiaci.*

masculine: dominus meus est **īrātissimus**.

*My master is **very angry**.*

feminine: uxor mea est **īrātissima**.

*My wife is **very angry**.*

3rd declension forms of adjectives (e.g. **fortis**, **fēlix**, and all the comparative **-ior** forms) usually have the same form for both the masculine and feminine gender:

masculine: puer est **pulchrior** quam puella.

*The boy is **more beautiful** than the girl.*

feminine: puella est **pulchrior** quam puer.

*The girl is **more beautiful** than the boy.*

- 5 Some important adjectives form their comparative and superlative in an irregular way:

bonus

good

melior

better

optimus

best, very good

magnus

big

maior

bigger

maximus

biggest, very big

and

multus

much

plūs

more

plūrimus

most, very much

which becomes in the plural:

multī

many

plūrēs

more

plūrimī

most, very many

Note: **plūs** is a neuter noun.

6 Further examples:

- 1 leō erat maior quam Herculēs.
- 2 Clēmēns plūrēs amīcōs quam Eutychus habēbat.
- 3 Barbillus plūrēs gemmās quam Quīntus habēbat.
- 4 Aristō erat poēta melior quam Barbillus.
- 5 Petrō erat medicus melior quam iste astrologus.
- 6 Quīntus numquam gemmās maiōrēs vīderat.

7 Translate each sentence below, then change the adjective in boldface into the superlative form, and then translate again.

For example: ātrium **magnum** erat. *The atrium was **big**.*

This becomes: ātrium **maximum** erat. *The atrium was **very big**.*

- 1 rhētor puerōs **bonōs** laudāvit.
- 2 **multī** cīvēs in flammīs periērunt.
- 3 Quīntus servīs **bonīs** libertātem dedit.
- 4 Herculēs erat **magnus**, et **magnum** fūstem habēbat.

8 Translate the first (a) sentence of each pair below.

Complete the second (b) sentence with a comparative and superlative adjective, using the first sentence as a guide, and then translate. The positive form of the adjective is given in parentheses after each sentence.

- 1a Cerberus est ferōcissimus; canem ferōciōrem numquam vīdī.
(ferōx)
- 1b gladiātor est; virum numquam vīdī. (audāx)
- 2a frāter meus est sapientior quam tū; sapientissimus est. (sapiēns)
- 2b Bregāns est quam Loquāx; est. (īnsolēns)
- 3a mīlītēs sunt fortiōrēs quam cīvēs; fortissimī sunt. (fortis)
- 3b servī sunt quam libertī; sunt. (trīstis)
- 4a Melissa vōcem suāvissimam habēbat; vōcem suāviōrem numquam audīvī. (suāvis)
- 4b Caecilius servum habēbat; servum numquam vīdī.
(fidēlis)

Pronouns

1 In Unit 1, you learned the Latin words for *I, you* (singular), *me*, etc.:

	<i>I</i>	<i>you</i>
SINGULAR		
nominative	ego	tū
genitive (not yet learned)		
dative	mihi	tibi
accusative	mē	tē
ablative (not yet learned)		

senex **mihi** illum equum dedit.
*The old man gave that horse **to me**.*

rhētor **tē** laudāvit.
*The teacher praised **you**.*

iuvenis **tibi** hunc ānulum ostendit.
*The young man showed this ring **to you**.*

dominus **mē** vituperāvit.
*The master found fault with **me**.*

2 You also learned the words for *we, you* (plural), *us*, etc.:

	<i>we</i>	<i>you</i>
PLURAL		
nominative	nōs	vōs
genitive (not yet learned)		
dative	nōbīs	vōbīs
accusative	nōs	vōs
ablative (not yet learned)		

nōs Rōmānī sumus mīlitēs.
***We** Romans are soldiers.*

centuriōnēs **nōbīs** gladiōs
 dedērunt.
*The centurions gave the swords **to us**.*

puer **nōs** vituperābat.
*The boy was cursing **us**.*

vōs Graecī estis servī.
***You** Greeks are slaves.*

servī **vōbīs** villam custōdiunt.
*The slaves are guarding the house
for you.*

dominus **vōs** īnspicere vult.
*The master wants to inspect **you**.*

3 Notice the Latin for *with me*, *with you*, etc.:

Salvius **mēcum** ambulābat.
*Salvius was walking **with me**.*

Rūfilla **tēcum** cēnābat.
*Rufilla was having dinner **with you**.*

rēx **nōbīscum** vēnit.
*The king came **with us**.*

iuvenēs **vōbīscum** pugnābant?
*Were the young men fighting **with you**?*

Compare this with the usual Latin way of saying *with*:

rēx **cum Salviō** ambulābat. milītēs **cum iuvenibus** pugnābant.
*The king was walking **with Salvius**. The soldiers were fighting **with the young men**.*

Can you describe in your own words when **cum** should *follow* the word for the person accompanied and when it should come *before*? If you can't, study the above sentences again.

4 Further examples:

- 1 ego tibi pecūniam dedī.
- 2 rēx nōs ad aulam invītāvit.
- 3 Cogidubnus nōbīscum sedēbat.
- 4 cūr mē accūsās?
- 5 nōs servī semper labōrāmus.
- 6 necesse est vōbīs mēcum venīre.
- 7 vōs Quīntō crēditis, sed Salvius mihi crēdit.
- 8 tē pūnīre possum quod ego sum dominus.
- 9 decōrum est mihi Quīntum invītāre.
- 10 vōs nautae, postquam tuba sonuit, diū clāmāvistis.
- 11 ubi prīnceps nōbīs signum dedit, exiimus.
- 12 quid tū fēcistī?

- 5 The words **ego**, **tū**, etc. belong to a group of words called *pronouns*. Pronouns are used in sentences in a way similar to nouns. For example, this sentence uses the noun **Salvius**:

Salvius est dominus.

Salvius is the master.

But if Salvius himself were the speaker of the sentence, he would use not the noun **Salvius** but the pronoun **ego**:

ego sum dominus

I am the master.

Somebody speaking to Salvius would replace the noun **Salvius** with the pronoun **tū**:

tū es dominus.

You are the master.

And somebody speaking about Salvius, without facing him, could say:

hic est dominus.

This man is the master.

ille est dominus.

That man is the master.

The pronouns **hic** and **ille** are a special kind of pronoun called *demonstrative pronouns*. Another demonstrative pronoun that you have met is **iste** *that person*—angrily.

- 6 You have also learned the pronoun **sē**, meaning *himself*, *herself*, or *themselves*. It has the same form for both singular and plural, both masculine and feminine. It does not have a nominative case:

	<u>singular</u>	<u>plural</u>
<i>nominative (none)</i>		
<i>genitive (not yet learned)</i>		
<i>dative</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>accusative</i>	sē	sē
<i>ablative (not yet learned)</i>		

Dumnorix in ursam **sē** coniēcit.

rēgīna **sē** interfēcit.

Dumnorix threw **himself** at the bear.

The queen killed **herself**.

mercātor **sibi** villam ēmit.

The merchant bought the house **for himself**.

or The merchant bought himself a house.

mīlitēs in longis ōrdinibus **sē** īnstrūxērunt.

*The soldiers drew **themselves** up in long lines.*

candidātī quoque **sibi** crēdebant.

*The candidates too had faith **in themselves**.*

- 7 In Stages 15 and 16, you learned various forms of the *relative pronoun* **quī**, which is placed at the start of a *relative clause* and means *a ho, a hich*, etc.:

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	
genitive (not yet learned)						not
dative (not yet learned)						yet
accusative	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	learned
ablative (not yet learned)						

ursa, **quam** Quīntus vulnerāvit, nunc mortua est.

*The bear **which** Quīntus wounded is now dead.*

ubi est templum, **quod** Augustus Caesar aedificāvit.

*Where is the temple **which** Augustus Caesar built?*

in mediō ātriō stābant mīlitēs, **quī** rēgem custōdiēbant.

*In the middle of the atrium stood the soldiers, **who** were guarding the king.*

The noun described by a relative clause is known as the *antecedent* of the relative pronoun. For example, in the first Latin sentence above, **ursa** is the antecedent of **quam**.

- 8 In Stage 19, the following forms of the *demonstrative pronoun hic* *this* (plural: *these*) were listed:

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	(not yet learned)
genitive (not yet learned)						
dative (not yet learned)						
accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	
ablative (not yet learned)						

hae stolae sunt sordidae!
***These** dresses are dirty!*

hunc servum pūnīre volō.
*I want to punish **this** slave.*

- 9 You have also learned the following forms of the *demonstrative pronoun ille* *that* (plural: *those*):

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative	ille	illa		illī	illae	
genitive (not yet learned)			(not yet learned)			(not yet learned)
dative (not yet learned)						
accusative	illum	illam		illōs	illās	
ablative (not yet learned)						

illa taberna nunc est mea.
***That** store is now mine.*

ille diēs quem timēbat Cephalus tandem advēnit.
***That** day which Cephalus feared arrived at last.*

spectā **illōs** hominēs! audīvit **illās** precēs dea Īsis.
*Look at **those** men! The goddess Isis heard **those** prayers.*

illae sunt fēminae quās vīdī rosās in viam spargentēs.
***Those** are the women whom I saw scattering roses on the street.*

10 In Stage 20, the following forms of the *determinative pronoun* **eum** *him* & **eam** *her* (nominative: **is** *he*) were listed:

	<i>singular</i>			<i>plural</i>		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative (not yet learned)</i>						
<i>genitive</i>	eius	eius	<i>(not yet learned)</i>	eīs	eīs	<i>(not yet learned)</i>
<i>dative</i>	eī	eī	<i>(not yet learned)</i>	eīs	eīs	<i>(not yet learned)</i>
<i>accusative</i>	eum	eam	<i>(not yet learned)</i>	eōs	eās	<i>(not yet learned)</i>
<i>ablative (not yet learned)</i>						

imperātor **eōs** laudāvit. dominus **eī** praemium dedit.
*The emperor praised **them**. The master gave a reward **to him** (or **her**).*
or *The master gave him (or her) a reward.*

11 Further examples:

- 1 postquam senex hoc dīxit, Barbillus eum laudāvit.
- 2 in palaestrā erant multī āthlētae, quī sē exercēbant.
- 3 quamquam puellae prope mē stābant, eās vidēre nōn poteram.
- 4 hoc est vīnum quod Cogidubnus ex Italiā importat.
- 5 simulac mercātōrēs advēnērunt, Clēmēns eīs pecūniam trādīdit.
- 6 dā mihi illum fūstem!
- 7 mīlītēs quōs imperātor mīserat nōbīscum sedēbant.
- 8 Barbillus hās gemmās sibi ēmit.
- 9 rēgīna, quae tē honōrāvit, nōs castīgāvit.
- 10 illa stola quam ēmisit est pulcherrima.
- 11 prīncipēs quōs Cogidubnus vocāverat convēnērunt.
- 12 simulac Eutychus hanc tabernam intrāvit, vōcem eius audīvi.

12 The various forms of the *demonstrative pronouns* **hic** and **ille** can also be used to mean *he, him* (masculine), *she, her* (feminine), and *they, them* (plural):

hic dēcidit exanimātus; **illa** tamen nōn erat perterrita.
***He** fell down unconscious; **she**, however, was not terrified.*

illam vīdī. mē vīdit **illa**.
*I saw **her**. **She** saw me.*

Verbs

1 You have learned the following forms of the verb:

<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>third -iō conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT INFINITIVE				
<i>to carry</i> portāre	<i>to teach</i> docēre	<i>to drag</i> trahere	<i>to take</i> capere	<i>to hear</i> audīre
PRESENT TENSE				
<i>I carry, you carry, etc.</i> portō portās portat portāmus portātis portant	<i>I teach, you teach, etc.</i> doceō docēs docet docēmus docētis docent	<i>I drag, you drag, etc.</i> trahō trahis trahit trahimus trahitis trahunt	<i>I take, you take, etc.</i> capiō capis capit capimus capitis capiunt	<i>I hear, you hear, etc.</i> audiō audīs audit audīmus audītis audiunt
IMPERFECT TENSE				
<i>I was carrying, etc.</i> portābam portābās portābat portābāmus portābātis portābant	<i>I was teaching, etc.</i> docēbam docēbās docēbat docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant	<i>I was dragging, etc.</i> trahēbam trahēbās trahēbat trahēbāmus trahēbātis trahēbant	<i>I was taking, etc.</i> capiēbam capiēbās capiēbat capiēbāmus capiēbātis capiēbant	<i>I was hearing, etc.</i> audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
PERFECT TENSE				
<i>I (have) carried, etc.</i> portāvī portāvistī portāvit portāvimus portāvistis portāvērunt	<i>I (have) taught, etc.</i> docuī docuistī docuit docuimus docuistis docuērunt	<i>I (have) dragged, etc.</i> trāxī trāxistī trāxit trāximus trāxistis trāxērunt	<i>I (have) taken, etc.</i> cēpī cēpistī cēpit cēpimus cēpistis cēpērunt	<i>I (have) heard, etc.</i> audīvī audīvistī audīvit audīvimus audīvistis audīvērunt

<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>third -iō conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE				
<i>I had carried, etc.</i>	<i>I had taught, etc.</i>	<i>I had dragged, etc.</i>	<i>I had taken, etc.</i>	<i>I had heard, etc.</i>
portāveram	docueram	trāxeram	cēperam	audīveram
portāverās	docuerās	trāxerās	cēperās	audīverās
portāverat	docuerat	trāxerat	cēperat	audīverat
portāverāmus	docuerāmus	trāxerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
portāverātis	docuerātis	trāxerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
portāverant	docuerant	trāxerant	cēperant	audīverant
IMPERATIVE				
<i>carry!</i>	<i>teach!</i>	<i>drag!</i>	<i>take!</i>	<i>hear!</i>
portā	docē	trahe	cape	audī
portāte	docēte	trahite	capite	audīte

2 Translate the following examples:

- 1 portāvī: audīvī: portābam: audiēbam.
- 2 portābant: docēbant: portāvīmus: trāxīmus.
- 3 trahēbās: capiēbāmus: audiēbātis: audiēbam.
- 4 docuit: trāxit: cēperunt: cēpit: trāxērunt.
- 5 portāvistī: audīvistī: audīvistis: cēpistī.
- 6 docuerās: audīverās: audīverātis: trāxerātis.
- 7 capiēbat: cēperat: audīverat: audiēbat.
- 8 portātis: docēbātis: trāxistis: audīverātis.
- 9 portābāmus: audiēbāmus: portāvīmus: audīvīmus.
- 10 docueram: portābam: cēperam: trahēbam.
- 11 trahō: cēpī: audiēbam: portāveram.
- 12 portāmus: audiēbāmus: cēpimus: docuerāmus.

3 In paragraph 1, find the Latin words for:

I was carrying; I was dragging; you [singular] were hearing; you [plural] were taking.

What would be the Latin for the following?

we carried; we heard; we took; we taught; you [plural] had begun; they taught; they dragged; you [plural] dragged

- 4 Translate the following examples, then change them from the singular to the plural, so that they mean *we* instead of *I*, and translate again:

trahō; audīvī; docēbam; labōrābam; faciēbam; scrīpsī; iubeō; īnspiciō.
(Remember that **īnspiciō** is third conjugation “-iō”)

- 5 Translate the following examples, then change them from the plural to the singular, so that they mean *I* instead of *we*, and then translate again:

portāvimus; trahimus; audīverāmus; facimus; docēmus; laudāmus;
capiēbāmus; intellēximus.

- 6 Translate the following examples, then change them to mean *I* instead of *he*, and translate again:

trahēbat; īnspiciēbat; docet; intrāvit; dormiēbat; sedet; īnspexit.

- 7 Translate the following examples, then change them to mean *we* instead of *they*, and translate again:

nāvigāvērunt; scrīpsērunt; īnspiciunt; terrent; vēndēbant; faciunt;
complēverant.

8 The forms of the verb that indicate *I*, *you* (singular), and *he* (or *she* or *it*) are known as the *1st*, *2nd*, and *3rd persons singular*; the forms that indicate *we*, *you* (plural), and *they* are known as the *1st*, *2nd*, and *3rd persons plural*. The table below summarizes the Latin personal endings and the English translations that are used to indicate the different persons:

	Latin personal ending		English
	present, imperfect, and pluperfect	perfect	
1st person singular	-ō or -m	-ī	I
2nd person singular	-s	-istī	you
3rd person singular	-t	-it	s/he, it
1st person plural	-mus	-imus	we
2nd person plural	-tis	-istis	you
3rd person plural	-nt	-ērunt	they

Thus, a word like **trāxerant** can be both translated (*they had dragged*) and described (*3rd person plural pluperfect*). Two further examples, **portāvī** and **docent**, are described and translated as follows:

pōrtāvī	1st person singular perfect	<i>I carried</i>
docent	3rd person plural present	<i>they teach</i>

9 Translate and describe the following examples.

trāxī; audīs; portābāmus; capis; docuerant; ambulāvistī; dīxerat

Irregular Verbs

1 You have learned the following forms of five irregular verbs:

PRESENT INFINITIVE

esse <i>to be</i>	posse <i>to be able</i>	velle <i>to want</i>	īre <i>to go</i>	ferre <i>to bring</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

PRESENT TENSE

<i>I am, you are, etc.</i>	<i>I am able, you are able, etc.</i>	<i>I want, you want, etc.</i>	<i>I go, you go, etc.</i>	<i>I bring, you bring, etc.</i>
sum	possum	volō	eō	ferō
es	potes	vīs	īs	fers
est	potest	vult	it	fert
sumus	possumus	volumus	īmus	ferimus
estis	potestis	vultis	ītis	fertis
sunt	possunt	volunt	eunt	ferunt

IMPERFECT TENSE

<i>I was, etc.</i>	<i>I was able, etc.</i>	<i>I was wanting, etc.</i>	<i>I was going, etc.</i>	<i>I was bringing, etc.</i>
eram	poteram	volēbam	ībam	ferēbam
erās	poterās	volēbās	ībās	ferēbās
erat	poterat	volēbat	ībat	ferēbat
erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus
erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	ībātis	ferēbātis
erant	poterant	volēbant	ībant	ferēbant

PERFECT TENSE

<i>I was (have been), etc.</i>	<i>I was able (have been able), etc.</i>	<i>I (have) wanted, etc.</i>	<i>I have gone I went, etc.</i>	<i>I (have) brought, etc.</i>
fuī	potuī	voluī	īī	tulī
fuistī	potuistī	voluistī	iistī	tulistī
fuit	potuit	voluit	iit	tulit
fuimus	potuimus	voluimus	iimus	tulimus
fuistis	potuistis	voluistis	iistis	tulistis
fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	iērunt	tulērunt

Note: **tulī**, the perfect tense of **ferō**, is very different from the present tense. Compare this kind of difference with *I went* and *I go* in English.

- 2 The negative forms of **volō** *I want* are formed in an irregular way. Compare the forms of **volō** *I want* with those of **nōlō** *I don't want*:

<i>I want,</i>	<i>I don't want,</i>
<i>you want,</i>	<i>you don't want,</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
volō	nōlō
vīs	nōn vīs
vult	nōn vult
volumus	nolumus
vultis	nōn vultis
volunt	nōlunt

- 3 **sum** and **possum** also form their *imperfect* tense in an irregular way:

<i>I was,</i>	<i>I was able,</i>
<i>you were,</i>	<i>you were able,</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
eram	poteram
erās	poterās
erat	poterat
erāmus	poterāmus
erātis	poterātis
erant	poterant

- 4 Using paragraphs 1, 2, and 3, translate the following examples:

ferunt; es; potes; ībat; erāmus; poterāmus; fert; nōn vultis; tulit; sumus; ferēbant; vīs.

- 5 In paragraph 1 find the Latin for:

he wants; they go; I was bringing; he went; you (plural) could; to bring; they wanted.

- 6 In paragraphs 2 and 3, find the Latin for:

they were; he doesn't want; we were able; you (singular) are able; they want; they can; we were; they could.

- 7 The verbs **adsum** *I am present* and **absum** *I am absent* are formed by adding **ad** and **ab** to the forms of **sum**.

<i>I am,</i>	<i>I am present,</i>	<i>I am absent,</i>
<i>you are,</i>	<i>you are present,</i>	<i>you are absent,</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
sum	adsum	absum
es	ades	abes
est	adest	abest
sumus	adsumus	absumus
estis	adestis	abestis
sunt	adsunt	absunt

- 8 In paragraph 7, find the Latin for:

he is present; we are absent; they are present; you (plural) are absent;
you (singular) are present; she is present.

Word Order

- 1 Notice the word order in the following sentences:

clāmābant Rēgnēnsēs.	<i>The Regnenses were shouting.</i>
intrāvit Cogidubnus.	<i>Cogidubnus entered.</i>

Further examples:

- 1 saltābant ancillae.
- 2 labōrābat Clēmēns.
- 3 dormiēbat rēx.

- 2 From Stage 7 (in Unit 1) onwards, you have met the following word order:

amīcum salūtāvit.	<i>He greeted his friend.</i>
ancillās laudāvimus.	<i>We praised the slave-girls.</i>

Further examples:

- 1 rēgem salūtāvērunt.
- 2 dominōs audīvimus.
- 3 pecūniam invēnit.

3 From Stage 18 onwards, you have met the following word order:

discum petīvit āthlēta. *The athlete looked for the discus.*
nautās vituperāvit Belimicus. *Belimicus cursed the sailors.*

Further examples:

- 1 amphoram portābat vīlicus.
- 2 vīnum bibēbant prīncipēs.
- 3 gladiātōrēs laudāvit nūntius.

4 From Stage 17 onwards, you have also met the following word order:

mercātōrem rēx dēcēpit. *The king deceived the merchant.*
equum agricola vēndidit. *The farmer sold the horse.*

Further examples:

- 1 puellās iuvenis spectāvit.
- 2 gladiātōrem leō interfēcit.
- 3 āctōrēs rēgīna honōrāvit.

5 The following sentences include all the different kinds of word order illustrated in paragraphs 1–4:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 surrēxērunt prīncipēs. | 5 rēgem cīvēs vīdērunt. |
| 2 fīlium pater vituperābat. | 6 plausērunt libertī. |
| 3 togam gerēbat. | 7 deōs laudāvimus. |
| 4 multitūdinem incitābat senex. | 8 mē dēcēpistī. |

6 The following examples each contain a noun in the dative case:

nūntiō epistolam dedī. *I gave a letter to the messenger.*
hospitibus agrum ostendit. *He showed the field to the guests.*
amīcīs crēdebāt. *He believed his friends.*

Further examples:

- 1 mercātōrī pecūniam reddidit.
- 2 mīlitibus cibum parāvī.
- 3 dominō resistēbant.
- 4 tibi faveō.

Longer Sentences—I (with “postquam,” “simulac,” etc.)

- 1 From Stage 6 (in Unit 1) onwards, you have met sentences like this:

Salvius, postquam fundum īnspectit, ad vīllam revēnit.

Salvius, after he inspected the farm, returned to the house.

Or, in more natural English,

After Salvius inspected the farm, he returned to the house.

- 2 From Stage 12 (in Unit 1) onwards, you have met sentences which are like the one above, but also contain a noun in the dative case. Study the following examples:

- 1 Rūfilla, postquam Salviō rem nārrāvit, surrēxit.

Rufilla, after she told the story to Salvius, stood up.

Or, in more natural English,

After Rufilla told Salvius the story, she stood up.

- 2 imperātor, postquam gladiātōribus lībertyātem dedit, ex amphitheātrō exiit.

After the emperor gave freedom to the gladiators, he went out of the amphitheater.

- 3 Further examples:

- 1 geminī, postquam coquō cibum trādidērunt, ē culinā discessērunt.

- 2 nūntius, postquam cīvibus spectāculum nūntiāvit, ad tabernam festināvit.

- 3 rēx, postquam gladiātōrī pecūniam dedit, leōnem mortuum īnspectit.

- 4 From Stage 13 onwards, you have met sentences with **quamquam**, **simulac**, and **ubi** *when*. Study the following examples:

- 1a Pompēius custōdēs interfēcit.

Pompeius killed the guards.

- 1b Pompēius, quamquam invītus erat, custōdēs interfēcit.

Pompeius, although he was unwilling, killed the guards.

Or, in more natural English,

Although Pompeius was unwilling, he killed the guards.

2a puer ē triclīniō contendit.

The boy hurried out of the dining-room.

2b simulac Salvius signum dedit, puer ē triclīniō contendit.

As soon as Salvius gave the signal, the boy hurried out of the dining-room.

3a Bregāns fūgit.

Bregans ran away.

3b ubi Salvius revēnit irātus, Bregāns fūgit.

When Salvius came back angry, Bregans ran away.

5 Translate the following examples of sentences with **quamquam**, **simulac**, **ubi** *when*, and **quod** *because*:

1 senex, quamquam uxor pompam vidēre volēbat, ex urbe discessit.

2 amīcī, simulac tabernam vīdērunt dīreptam, ad Clēmētem cucurrērunt.

3 iuvenēs, ubi Helenam cōspexērunt, appropinquāvērunt.

4 simulac nāvem vīdit, Quīntus "ecce!" clāmāvit.

5 Salvius, quamquam servī dīlīgenter labōrābant, nōn erat contentus.

6 Clēmēns, quod Eutychus tabernae iam appropinquābat, amīcōs arcessīvit.

7 servus, simulac multītūdō ērūpit turbulenta, ad templum Serāpidis cucurrit.

8 Quīntus, quod amīcus Barbillus ad vēnātiōnem ire volēbat, in villā eius manēre nōn potuit.

6 Complete each sentence with the most suitable group of words from the list below, and then translate. Use each group of words once only.

ubi saxō appropinquant

quamquam servī dīlīgenter labōrābant

simulac sacerdōtēs ē cellā templī prōcessērunt

postquam hospitī cubiculum ostendit

ubi iuvenēs laeti ad theātrum contenderunt

quod turbam īfestam audire poterat

1 dominus nōn erat contentus.

2 necesse est nautīs, cursum tenere rēctum.

3 puer timēbat ē casā exire,

4 tacuērunt omnēs.

5 māter, cibum in culina gustavit.

6 senex in tablino manebat occupatus

- 7 From Stage 15 onwards, you met sentences containing *relative clauses* introduced by such words as **quī** and **quae**:

sacerdōtēs quī prope āram stābant victimās īnspectērunt.

The priests who were standing near the altar inspected the victims.

- 8 Translate the following examples, and pick out the relative clause if there is one. Find the noun that is being described by each relative clause.

- 1 flōrēs rēgem dēlectāvērunt.
- 2 flōrēs quī in hortō erant rēgem dēlectāvērunt.
- 3 nāvis ad mētā advēnit.
- 4 nāvis quam Belimicus dīrigēbat ad mētā advēnit.
- 5 prīncipēs quī in aulā sedēbant “vīnum!” clāmāvērunt.
- 6 fēminae quae in aulā cum prīncipibus sedēbant servōs spectābant.
- 7 faber ex Italiā vēnit.
- 8 faber quī lectum faciēbat ex Italiā vēnit.
- 9 omnēs prīncipēs ad aulam contendērunt.
- 10 omnēs prīncipēs quī in amīcitiā cum Cogidubnō erant ad aulam contendērunt.
- 11 ursa servum ferōciter percussit.
- 12 ursa, quam terruerant clāmōrēs, servum ferōciter percussit.
- 13 Quīntus et Clēmēns ad Graeciam iērunt.
- 14 Quīntus et Clēmēns, quī nāvem cōnscenderant, ad Graeciam iērunt.

Longer sentences—II (with verbs understood)

- 1 You have met several examples of this kind of sentences:

Rēgnēsēs erant laetī. Cantiacī miserī.

The Regnenses were happy, the Canticai were miserable.

Britannī cibum laudāvērunt. Rōmānī vīnum.

The Britons praised the food, the Romans praised the wine.

- 2 Further examples:

1 ūnus servus est fūr. cēterī innocentēs.

2 Canticī Belimicum spectābant. Rēgnēsēs Dumnorigem.

- 3 The following examples are slightly different:

sacerdōs templum. poēta tabernam quaerēbat.

The priest was looking for a temple, the poet was looking for an altar.

iuvenis Aegyptius. senex Graecus erat.

The young man was Egyptian, the old man was Greek.

- 4 Further examples:

1 Clēmēs attonitus. Quīntus irātus erat.

2 mercātor stolās. caupō vīnum vëndēbat.

3 puer ad portum. ancillae ad theātrum contendērunt.

4 Cogidubnus magnum taurum. Salvius parvum agnum spectābant.

5 Galatēa stolam. iuvenēs Helenam spectābant.

PART TWO: Reference Grammar

(Including some forms introduced later in the course)

I Nouns

	<i>first declension</i>	<i>second declension</i>				
	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>n.</i>		
SINGULAR						
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puella	servus (<i>voc. serve</i>)	puer	templum		
<i>genitive</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	templī		
<i>dative</i>	puellae	servō	puerō	templō		
<i>accusative</i>	puellam	servum	puerum	templum		
<i>ablative</i>	puellā	servō	puerō	templō		
PLURAL						
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	templa		
<i>genitive</i>	puellārum	servōrum	puerōrum	templōrum		
<i>dative</i>	puellis	servīs	puerīs	templīs		
<i>accusative</i>	puellās	servōs	puerōs	templa		
<i>ablative</i>	puellis	servīs	puerīs	templīs		
<i>third declension</i>						
	<i>m.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>m.f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
SINGULAR						
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	mercātor	leō	cīvis	rēx	urbs	nōmen
<i>genitive</i>	mercātōris	leōnis	cīvis	rēgis	urbis	nōminis
<i>dative</i>	mercātōrī	leōnī	cīvī	rēgī	urbī	nōminī
<i>accusative</i>	mercātōreim	leōnem	cīvem	rēgem	urbem	nōmen
<i>ablative</i>	mercātōre	leōne	cīve	rēge	urbe	nōmine
PLURAL						
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs	nōmina
<i>genitive</i>	mercātōrum	leōnum	cīvium	rēgum	urbium	nōminum
<i>dative</i>	mercātōribus	leōnibus	civibus	rēgibus	urbibus	nōminibus
<i>accusative</i>	mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs	nōmina
<i>ablative</i>	mercātōribus	leōnibus	cīvibus	rēgibus	urbibus	nōminibus

II Adjectives

1 FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative and vocative	bonus (voc. bone)	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
genitive	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
dative	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
accusative	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
ablative	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

2 THIRD DECLENSION

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
nominative and vocative	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
genitive	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
dative	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
accusative	fortem	fortem	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
ablative	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

III Pronouns

1 PERSONAL PRONOUNS (I, you, etc.)

	singular		plural	
	first person	second person	third person	fourth person
nominative	ego	tū	nōs	vōs
genitive	meī	tui	nostrum	vestrum
dative	mihi	tibi	nōbis	vōbīs
accusative	mē	tē	nōs	vōs
ablative	mē	tē	nōbīs	vōbīs

2 REFLEXIVE PRONOUN (herself, himself, myself, themselves)

singular and plural	
nominative (no forms)	
genitive	sui
dative	sibi
accusative	se
ablative	se

3 RELATIVE PRONOUN (*who, which, etc.*)

	<i>singular</i>			<i>plural</i>		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>genitive</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>dative</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>accusative</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

4 DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	<i>singular</i>			<i>plural</i>		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
hic (<i>this, these, etc.</i>)						
<i>nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>genitive</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>dative</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
ille (<i>that, those, etc.</i>)						
<i>nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>genitive</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>dative</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

5 DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN (*he, she, it; that, those, etc.*)

	<i>singular</i>			<i>plural</i>		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
<i>genitive</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>dative</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>accusative</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

IV Verbs

See Review Grammar, pp 178–79, for grammatical tables of infinitive, present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and imperative.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (*carrying, teaching, dragging, taking, hearing*)

	<i>first conj.</i>	<i>second conj.</i>	<i>third conj.</i>	<i>third conj. -iō</i>	<i>fourth conj.</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	portāns	docēns	trahēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>genitive</i>	portantis	docentis	trahentis	capientis	audientis
<i>dative</i>	portantī	docentī	trahentī	capientī	audientī
<i>accusative</i>	portantem	docentem	trahentem	capientem	audientem
<i>ablative</i>	portantī/-e	docentī/-e	trahentī/-e	capientī/-e	audientī/-e
PLURAL					
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	portantēs	docentēs	trahentēs	capientēs	audientēs
<i>genitive</i>	portantium	docentium	trahentium	capientium	audientium
<i>dative</i>	portantibus	docentibus	trahentibus	capientibus	audientibus
<i>accusative</i>	portantēs	docentēs	trahentēs	capientēs	audientēs
<i>ablative</i>	portantibus	docentibus	trahentibus	capientibus	audientibus

See Review Grammar, pp. 182–83, for tables of some irregular verbs: **esse** *to be*, **posse** *to be able*, **velle** *to want*, **īre** *to go*, **ferre** *to bring*, and **nōlle** *not to want*.

V The Infinitive

In Stage 13, you met the *infinitive* of the verb (e.g. **portāre** *to carry*, **dormīre** *to sleep*). You have met two types of infinitive constructions.

1 Complementary Infinitive

A complementary infinitive *complements* or *completes* a sentence which generally contains an auxiliary (helping) verb such as **volō** *I want*, **nōlumus** *we do not want*, or **potes** *you are able*. The following sentences contain a helping verb and a complementary infinitive:

amphoram magnam portāre potes.
ad urbem redīre nōlēbam.

You are able to carry a large wine-jar.
I did not want to return to the city.

2 Subject Infinitive

A subject infinitive is similar to a noun in that it is described by an adjective, such as **necesse** *necessary* or **decōrum** *proper*. The following sentences are examples of how the subject infinitive may be used in English:

To err is human. (“To err” is the infinitive, and “human” is the adjective that describes it.)
To resist is useless. (“To resist” is the infinitive, and “useless” is the adjective.)

The following are examples of the use of the subject infinitive in Latin:

necesse est cubiculum ōrnāre.
hospitem nostrum vexāre nōn decōrum est.

It is necessary to decorate the bedroom.
It is not proper to annoy our guest.

VI Agreement of Nouns and Adjectives

1 Case and Number

In Stage 14, you learned that an adjective must agree with the noun it describes in *case* and *number*. Study the following sentence:

magnus servus iānuam custodiēbat. *The large slave was guarding the door.*

The adjective **magnus** and the noun **servus** are both in the nominative case and they are both singular. Here is another example:

nautae nāvēs pulchrās cōspexērunt. *The sailors caught sight of the beautiful ships.*

The noun **nāvēs** and the adjective **pulchrās** are both accusative plural.

2 Gender

In Stage 18, you learned about the *gender* of nouns: every Latin noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter (a few, such as **cīvis** *citizen*, can be either masculine or feminine). An adjective must agree with the noun it describes in gender, as well as in case and number. Study again the examples shown in paragraph VI.1 above. In the first example, **magnus** is masculine to agree with **servus**, a masculine noun. In the second example, **pulchrās** is feminine to agree with **nāvēs**, a feminine noun. Refer to the noun and adjective tables on pp. 190 and 191 to review the endings for all three genders.

VII Relative Clauses

In Stage 15, you were introduced to a type of subordinate clause known as a *relative clause*, which is generally introduced by a relative pronoun and ends with a verb that is subordinate to the verb in the main clause.

1 Function of the Relative Clause

A relative clause can be substituted for an adjective, and it provides information about the noun it describes in the same way that an adjective does: by answering such questions as “who?”, “which?”, “what kind of?”, etc. In Latin, the relative clause frequently occupies the usual position of the adjective—that is, following the noun it describes. For example, compare the following sentences:

fēlēs sacra ad Clēmentem accurrit.

The sacred cat ran up to Clemens.

fēlēs, quae in templō habitābat, ad Clēmentem accurrit.

The cat, which was living in the temple, ran up to Clemens.

Note that in the first sentence **fēlēs** *the cat* is described by an adjective, **sacra**. In the second sentence, **fēlēs** is described by the relative clause **quae in templō habitābat**. The adjective and the relative clause occupy the same position in the two sentences.

2 The Relative Pronoun

It is the relative pronoun (see p. 192 for a table of forms of the relative pronoun) that distinguishes the relative clause from other types of subordinate clause. The relative pronoun refers directly to the noun which the whole clause describes, and that noun

is known as the *antecedent* of the relative pronoun. A relative pronoun (like an adjective) must agree with its antecedent in number and gender, but (unlike an adjective) it need not agree in case. This is because the case of the relative pronoun is determined by its function within the relative clause, not by the case of the noun in the main clause. Study the following example:

pompa, quam Aristō Galatēaque spectābant, magnifica erat.

The procession, which Aristo and Galatea were watching, was magnificent.

The noun **pompa**, which is being described by the relative clause, is feminine and singular. It is nominative, because it is the subject of the main verb **erat**. The relative pronoun **quam** is also feminine and singular, as it must be to agree with **pompa**, but it is in the accusative case, because it is the direct object of the verb **spectābant** in the relative clause.

VIII Participial Phrases

In Stage 14, you were introduced to the present participle, a part of a verb (see § IV above). A participle, like an adjective, agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender; like a verb, it describes the action or state of the noun with which it agrees.

An adjective, a relative clause, and a participial phrase (so far made up of a participle and its adverbial modifiers) can all be used to express a similar idea. For example, compare the following sentences:

Barbillus in mediō cubiculō ancillās trīstēs vīdit.

Barbillus saw the sad slave-girls in the middle of his room.

Barbillus ancillās, quae in mediō cubiculō lacrimābant, vīdit.

Barbillus saw the slave-girls, who were weeping in the middle of his room.

Barbillus ancillās in mediō cubiculō lacrimantēs vīdit.

Barbillus saw the slave-girls weeping in the middle of his room.

IX The Genitive Case

In Stage 17, you met the *genitive* case of the noun. You have seen the genitive case used in two types of construction.

1 Genitive of Possession

The genitive case is commonly used to indicate possession, as in the following expressions:

vīlla Barbillī	<i>the house of Barbillus or Barbillus' house</i>
pēs leōnis	<i>the paw of the lion or the lion's paw</i>

2 Genitive of Description

Sometimes the genitive case is used, like an adjective, to describe a noun, as in the following expression:

multitūdō Aegyptiōrum	<i>a crowd of Egyptians</i>
------------------------------	-----------------------------

X Principal Parts of a Verb

In the Complete Vocabulary, pp. 198–213, you will find that most verbs are listed with three forms, e.g. **capīō, capere, cēpī**. These forms are the first three of a total of four *principal parts* which your teacher may eventually want you to learn for **capīō**. Many Latin verbs—not just **capīō**—have four principal parts. The fourth principal part is the *perfect participle*. You will meet this at the beginning of Unit 3.

Principal parts are called “principal” because they are like building blocks, out of which all forms of a given verb are made. English verbs, too, have their own kind of principal parts that serve as building blocks: e.g. *take, took, taken*. With these three words, one can make any form of the English verb: “I *take*,” for example, or “they *took*,” or “the victim was *taken* to the hospital.”

Knowing the principal parts of a verb can help you distinguish third conjugation “-iō” verbs from fourth conjugation verbs. The verbs below have similar endings in the first principal part (listed in the first column), but only third conjugation “-iō” verbs have, in the second column of matching infinitives, a short “e” before the “-re” termination.

third conjugation -iō

1	2	3	4
capīō <i>I take</i>	capere <i>to take</i>	cēpī <i>I took</i>	captus
cōnspiciō	cōnspicere	cōnspexī	cōnspectus
faciō	facere	fēcī	factus
īnspiciō	īnspicere	īnspexī	īnspectus

fourth conjugation

audiō <i>I hear</i>	audīre <i>to hear</i>	audīvī <i>I heard</i>	audītus
custōdiō	custōdīre	custōdīvī	custōdītus
dormiō	dormīre	dormīvī	(none)
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsus

Knowing the principal parts of a verb can help you distinguish first conjugation verbs from third conjugation verbs. The verbs below have similar endings in the first principal part (listed in the first column), but only third conjugation verbs have, in the second column of matching infinitives, a short “e” before the “-re” termination.

first conjugation

exspectō <i>I wait for</i>	exspectāre <i>to wait for</i>	exspectāvī <i>I waited for</i>	exspectātus
pugnō	pugnāre	pugnāvī	(none)
vituperō	vituperāre	vituperāvī	vituperātus

third conjugation

intellegō <i>I understand</i>	intellegere <i>to understand</i>	intellēxī <i>I understood</i>	intellēctus
reddō	reddere	reddidī	redditus
scribō	scribere	scripsī	scriptus

XI Sentence Patterns

Below are some of the most important sentence patterns which you have met in Unit 2. The patterns are shown on the left, with examples given on the right.
Key: NOM = nominative; ACC = accusative; DAT = dative; GEN = genitive; V = verbo
ADJ = adjective; INF = infinitive; RC = relative clause.

PATTERNS	EXAMPLES
V.1 NOM + INF + V	ancilla dormire vult. <i>The slave-girl wants to sleep.</i>
V.2 ADJ [decōrum, etc.] + est + DAT + ACC + INF	facile est dominō servum pūnīre. <i>It is easy for the master to punish the slave.</i>
V.3 NOM + RC + V	nāvis, quam Dumnorix dīrigebat, cōfusa erat. <i>The ship, which Dumnorix was steering, was full of water.</i>
V.4 DAT + ACC + V	Vespasiānō multum auxiliū dedit. <i>I gave much assistance to Vespasian.</i>
V.5 ACC + NOM + V	hominēs scelestōs deī semper pūnīunt. <i>The gods always punish evil-doers.</i>
V.6 NOM ACC + GEN + V	taberna Clēmētis ardēbat. <i>Clemens' store was burning.</i>
V.7 ACC + V + NOM	Clēmētem servāvit fēlēs sacra. <i>The sacreds at protected Clemens.</i>
V.8 "nesting" of one subordinate clause inside another	postquam Clēmēs, quī Eutychum īpūm et īpudētem timēbat, hoc dixit, Eutychus venēnū et sacra īpūm et īpudētem <i>After Clemens, who was not afraid of Eutychus and the thugs, said this, Eutychus was not a prudent</i> <i>rage.</i>

PART THREE: Complete Vocabulary

1 Nouns are listed in the following way:

the nominative case, e.g. *servus* (*slave*);
the genitive case, e.g. *servī* (*of a slave*, explained in Stage 17);
the gender of the noun (explained in Stage 18: m. = masculine, f. = feminine, n. = neuter);
the meaning.

Thus, if the following information is given:

pāx, *pācis*, f. *peace*

pāx means *peace*, **pācis** means *of peace*, and the word is feminine.

2 Adjectives are listed in the following way:

1st and 2nd declension adjectives are listed with the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms of the nominative singular, as follows:

bonus, *bona*, *bonum* *good*

3rd declension adjectives are usually listed with the masculine form only of the nominative singular, e.g. **fortis**, **trīstis**. (Often the masculine form will also serve as the feminine form, e.g. **fortis vir** and **fortis fēmina**.) Sometimes the genitive singular (which is always the same for all genders) is added, e.g. *ferōx*, *gen. ferōcis*; *ingēs*, *gen. ingentis*.

3 Verbs are usually listed in the following way:

The *I* form of the present tense, e.g. *parō* (*I prepare*);
the present infinitive, e.g. *parāre* (*to prepare*);
the *I* form of the perfect tense, e.g. *parāvī* (*I prepared*);
and the meaning.

So, if the first three of the usual four principal parts are listed:

āmittō, *āmittere*, *āmisī* *lose*

āmittō means *I lose*

āmittere means *to lose*

āmisī means *I lost*.

4 All words that are given in the “Words and Phrases Checklists” for Stages 1–20 are marked with an asterisk.

a

- * ā, ab from: *h*
- * abeō, abire, abī *go away*
- abiciō, abicere, abicē *throw away*
- * absum, abesse, āfui *be gone, be absent, be away*
- accidō, accidere, accidī *happen*
- * accipio, accipere, accēpi *accept, take in, receive*
- accurrēns, gen. accurrentis *running up*
- accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī *accuse*
- acētum, acētī, n. *vinegar*
- ācrit̄ *keenly, fiercely*
- āctor, āctoris, m. *actor*
- * ad to
- * adeō, adire, adī *approach, go up to*
- adeō *so much, so greatly*
- adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibuī *use, apply*
- precēs adhibēre *offer prayers to*
- adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī *help*
- administrāns, gen. administrantis *managing*
- administrō, administrāre, administrāvī *manage*
- admittō,mittere, admīsī *admit, let in*
- adlōrō, adlōrāre, adlōrāvī *worship*
- * adsum, adesce, adfui *be here, be present*
- * adveniō, advenire, advēnī *arrive*
- * aedificium, aedificiī, n. *building*
- * aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī *build*
- * aeger, aegra, aegrum *sick, ill*
- Aegyptius, Aegyptia, Aegyptium *Egyptian*
- Aegyptus, Aegyptī, f. *Egypt*
- aēneus, aēnea, aēneum *made of bronze*
- aequis, aequa, aequum *fair*
- Aethiopes, Aethiopum, m.f.pl. *Ethiopians*
- affligō, affligere, afflixī *afflict, hurt*
- ager, agri, m. *field*
- agilis *agile, nimble*
- agitans, gen. agitantis *chasing, hunting*
- * agitō, agitāre, agitāvī *chase, hunt*
- * agmen, agminis, n. *column (of people), procession*
- * agnosco, agnoscere, agnovī *recognize*
- agnus, agni, m. *lamb*
- * ago, agere, egi *do, act*
- age! *come on!*
- fabulam agere *act in a play*
- * gratias agere *thank, give thanks*

- * negotium agere *do business, work*
- * quid agis? *how are you?*
- * agricola, agricolae, m. *farmer*
- āla, ālae, f. *wing*
- Alexandrīnus, Alexandrīna, Alexandrīnum *Alexandrian*
- aliquandō *sometimes*
- * aliquid *something*
- * alius, alia, aliud *other, another, else*
- * alter, altera, alterum *the other, the second*
- altus, alta, altum *deep*
- in altum *towards the open sea*
- * ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī *walk*
- amīca, amīcae, f. *friend*
- * amīcō, bū *friendly, war*
- amicitia, amicitiae, f. *friendship*
- * amīcus, amīcī, m. *friend*
- * amittō, amittere, amīsī *lose*
- * amo, amare, amāvī *love, like*
- amphora, amphorae, f. *cup, jar*
- amulētum, amulētī, n. *amulet, charm*
- * ancilla, ancillae, f. *slave, girl, slave-servant*
- animal, animalis, n. *animal*
- * animus, animi, m. *spirit, soul*
- inimum recipere *accept, receive, accept*
- annus, anni, m. *year*
- anteā *before*
- * antiquus, antiqua, antiquum *old, ancient*
- * anulū, anulī, m. *ring*
- anus, anūs, f. *old woman*
- anxius, anxia, anxium *anxious*
- aperio, aperire, aperī *open*
- appareō, apparere, apparuī *appear*
- * appropinquo, appropinquare, appropinquāvī *approach, come near to*
- apud *among, at the house of*
- * aqua, aquae, f. *water*
- aquila, aquilae, f. *eag*
- ara, arae, f. *altar*
- Arabs, gen. Arabs *Arabian*
- aranea, araneae, f. *spider's web, spider*
- arator, aratoris, m. *ploughman*
- arca, arcae, f. *strong box, chest*
- * arcesso, arcescere, arcessivī, arcessio, arcessio *ask for*
- arctivēns *arctigen of, son of*
- arctos *arctic*
- arctus *arctic, arct, back, behind*
- arsa, arsae, f. *campfire*
- arsus, arsus, f. *camp*

*argenteus, argentea, argenteum *made of silver*
 armārium, armārii, n. *chest, cupboard*
 *ars, artis, f. *art, skill*
 ascendō, ascendere, ascendī *climb, rise*
 asinus, asini, m. *ass, donkey*
 assiduē *continually*
 astrologus, astrologi, m. *astrologer*
 Athēnae, Athēnārum, f.pl. *Athens*
 Athēniēnsis *Athenian*
 āthlēta, āthlētae, m. *athlete*
 *ātrium, ātriū, n. *atrium, reception hall*
 *attonitus, attonita, attonitum *astonished*
 audāx, gen. audācis *bold, daring*
 *audeō, audēre *dare*
 *audiō, audīre, audīvi *hear, listen to*
 *aula, aulae, f. *palace*
 aurātus, aurāta, aurātum *gilded, gold-plated*
 aureus, aurea, aureum *golden, made of gold*
 aureus, aurei, m. *gold coin, gold piece*
 *auris, auris, f. *ear*
 *auxilium, auxiliū, n. *help*
 avārus, avāra, avārum *miserly, stingy*
 *avārus, avārī, m. *miser*
 avidus, avida, avidum *eager*

b

bālō, bālāre, bālāvī *bleat*
 barbarus, barbari, m. *barbarian*
 *bene *well*
 benignitās, benignitātis, f. *kindness*
 *benignus, benigna, benignum *kind*
 bēstia, bēstiae, f. *wild animal, beast*
 *bibō, bibere, bibi *drink*
 *bonus, bona, bonum *good*
 Britanni, Britannōrum, m.pl. *Britons*
 Britannia, Britanniae, f. *Britain*
 Britannicus, Britannica, Britannicum *British*

c

cachinnāns, gen. cachinnantis *laughing, cackling*
 cachinnō, cachinnāre, cachinnāvī *laugh, cackle, roar with laughter*
 cachinnus, cachinnī, m. *laughter*
 cadō, cadere, cecidi *fall*
 *caedō, caedere, cecidi *kill*

caelum, caeli, n. *sky*
 caerimōnia, caerimōniae, f. *ceremony*
 caeruleus, caerulea, caeruleum *blue*
 caesus, caesa, caesum *killed*
 calcō, calcāre, calcāvī *step on*
 *callidus, callida, callidum *clever, smart*
 candēlābrum, candēlābrī, n. *lamp-stand, candelabrum*
 candidātus, candidātī, m. *candidate*
 *canis, canis, m. *dog*
 canistrum, canistrī, n. *basket*
 cantāns, gen. cantantis *singing, chanting*
 *cantō, cantāre, cantāvī *sing, chant*
 capillī, capillōrum, m.pl. *hair*
 *capiō, capere, cēpi *take, catch, capture*
 cōnsilium capere *make a plan, have an idea*
 captus, capta, captum *taken, caught, captured*
 *caput, capitis, n. *head*
 carmen, carminis, n. *song*
 carnifex, carnificis, m. *executioner*
 *cārus, cāra, cārum *dear*
 casa, casae, f. *small house, cottage*
 *castīgō, castīgāre, castīgāvī *scold, nag*
 caudex, caudicis, m. *blockhead, idiot*
 caupō, caupōnis, m. *innkeeper*
 *cautē *cautiously*
 cecidi *see cadō*
 cecidi *see caedō*
 cēdō, cēdere, cessi *give in, yield*
 *celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī *celebrate*
 *celeriter *quickly, fast*
 celerius *faster*
 .celerrimē *very quickly*
 quam celerrimē *as quickly as possible*
 cella, cellae, f. *sanctuary*
 cellārius, cellāriū, m. *(house) steward*
 cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī *hide*
 *cēna, cēnae, f. *dinner*
 *cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī *eat dinner, dine*
 centum *a hundred*
 *centuriō, centuriōnis, m. *centurion*
 cēpi *see capiō*
 *cēra, cērae, f. *wax, wax tablet*
 cērātus, cērāta, cērātum *wax, made of wax*
 certāmen, certāminis, n. *struggle, contest*
 certāmen nāvāle *boat race*
 certō, certāre, certāvī *compete*
 certus, certa, certum *certain, infallible*

cessi *see* cēdō
 * cēterī, cēterae, cētera *the others, the rest*
 Chaldaei, Chaldaeorum, m. pl.
Chaldeans
 * cibus, cibī, m. *food*
 * cinis, cineris, m. *ash*
 circum *around*
 * circumspectō, circumspectāre.
 circumspectāvī *look around*
 circumveniō, circumvenīre.
 circumvenī *surround*
 citharoedus, citharoedī, m. *cithara*
player
 * civis, civis, m. f. *citizen*
 clādēs, clādīs, f. *disaster*
 clam *secretly, in private*
 clāmāns, gen. clāmantis *shouting*
 * clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī *shout*
 * clāmor, clāmōris, m. *shout, uproar,*
racket
 claudicō, claudicāre, claudicāvī
be lame, limp
 * claudō, claudere, clausī *shut, close, block*
 * coepī *I began*
 * cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī *think, consider*
 * cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, *find out*
get to know
 collēctus, collēcta, collēctum *gathered,*
assembled
 colligō, colligere, collēgī *gather, collect,*
assemble
 * collocō, collocāre, collocāvī *place, put*
 columba, columbae, f. *doe, pigeon*
 comes, comitis, m. f. *comrade, companion*
 cōmis *polite, courteous, friendly*
 cōmiter *politely, courteously*
 commemorō, commemorāre,
 commemorāvī *talk about*
 * commodus, commoda, commodum
convenient
 commōtus, commōta, commōtum
mixed, upset, affected, alarmed, excited,
distressed
 * comparō, comparāre, comparāvī
obtain
 competitor, competitoris, m. *competitor*
 * compleō, complēre, complexī *fill*
 componō, componere, composui *put*
together, arrange, mix, make up
 conducō, conducere, condūxi *hire*
 confectus, confecta, confectum *finished*
 * conficiō, conficere, confēcī *finish*

cōnfidō, cōnfidere *trust*
 coniciō, conicere, coniecī *hurl, throw*
 coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī *join*
sē coniungere join
 * coniūratiō, coniūratiōnis, f. *plot,*
conspiracy
 coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī *plot,*
conspire
 cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendī
embark on, go on board
 cōnsciūs, cōnsciī, m. *accomplice*
 cōnsecrō, cōnsecrāre, cōnsecravī
dedicate
 * cōnsentiō, cōnsehtire, cōnsensī *agree*
 cōnserō, cōnserere, cōnseruī *stretch*
 cōnsidō, cōnsidere, cōnsedī *sit on*
 * cōnsiliū, cōnsiliī, n. *plan, idea*
 cōnsiliū capere *make a plan, have an*
idea
 * cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnsitiī *stand on*
ground, stand firm
 * cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspectī *catch*
sight of
 * cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī *eat*
 * contendō, contendere, contendi *argue*
 contentiō, contentiōnis, f. *argument*
 * contentus, contenta, contentum
satisfied
 contrā *against*
 contrōversia, contrōversiae, f. *debate*
 * conveniō, convenire, convenī *come*
together, gather, meet
 convertō, convertere, converti *turn*
sē convertere turn
 * coquō, coquere, coxi *cook*
 * coquus, coqui, m. *cook*
 cōrōna, cōrōnae, f. *garland, crown*
 * cotidiē *every day*
 * crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī *trust, believe*
trust, believe
 crīmēs, crīmīnū, m. pl. *crime*
 croceus, crocea, croceatū *crimson*
 crocodilus, crocodilī, m. *crocodile*
 * crudelis *cruel*
 * cubiculū, cubiculī, n. *bedroom*
 circumlocutiō *circumlocution*
 culina, culinae, f. *kitchen*
 * cūcti *all*
 cūctilis, cūctiliū, *gold*
 * cupio, cupere, cupivi, *wish*
 * curā, *care*
 curō, curare, *care*

- * cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī *take care of, supervise*
nihil cūrō *I don't care*
- currēns, *gen. currentis* *running*
- * currō, currere, cucurrī *run*
cursus, cursūs, *m.* *course*
- * custodiō, custodire, custodīvī *guard*
- * custōs, custōdis, *m.* *guard*
cutis, cutis, *f.* *skin*

d

- dare *see* dō
- * dē *from, down from; about*
- * dea, deac, *f.* *goddess*
- * dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī *owe, ought,*
should, must
- * decem *ten*
- * dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī *fall down*
dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī *deceive, trick*
- * decōrus, decōra, decōrum *right, proper*
dedī *see* dō
- * dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī *defend*
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī *throw down, throw*
- * deinde *then*
- * dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī *delight,*
please
- * dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī *destroy*
dēliciae, dēliciārum, *f. pl.* *darling*
dēligātus, dēligāta, dēligātum *tied up,*
moored
dēligō, dēligāre, dēligāvī *bind, tie, tie up*
- * dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre,
dēmōnstrāvī *point out, show*
dēnārius, dēnāriī, *m.* *a denarius (small*
coin worth four sesterces)
- * dēnique *at last, finally*
dēns, dentis, *m.* *tooth, tusk*
- * dēnsus, dēnsa, dēnsūm *thick*
dēpellō, dēpellere, dēpulī *drive off*
dēplōrāns, *gen. dēplōrantis* *complaining*
about
dēplōrō, dēplōrāre, dēplōrāvī
complain about
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī *put down,*
take off
- * dērīdeō, dērīdere, dērīsī *mock, make*
fun of
dēscendēns, *gen. dēscendentis* *coming*
down
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī
come down
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī *desert*

- dēsertus, dēserta, dēsertum *deserted*
in dēsertīs *in the desert*
- * dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsiluī *jump down*
dēspērāns, *gen. dēspērantis* *despairing*
- * dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī *despair*
dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī *draw*
(a sword), pull out
- * deus, deī, *m.* *god*
dexter, dextra, dextrum *right*
ad dextram *to the right*
diadēma, *gen. diadēmatis, n.* *diadem,*
crown
- * dīcō, dīcere, dīxī *say*
- * dictō, dictāre, dictāvī *dictate*
- * diēs, diēī, *m.* *day*
diēs fēstus, diēī fēstī, *m.* *festival,*
holiday
- * diēs nātālis, diēī nātālis, *m.* *birthday*
- * difficilis *difficult*
dignitās, dignitātis, *f.* *dignity*
- * dīliger *carefully*
- * dīmīttō, dīmītere, dīmīsī *send away,*
dismiss
dīreptus, dīrepta, dīreptum *torn apart,*
ransacked
dīrigō, dīrigere, dīrēxī *steer*
dīripiō, dīripere, dīripuī *tear apart,*
ransack
dīrus, dīra, dīrum *dreadful, awful*
- * discēdō, discēdere, discessī *depart,*
leave
dissecō, dissecāre, dissecuī *cut up*
dissectus, dissecta, dissectum *cut up,*
dismembered
- * diū *for a long time*
diūtius *any longer*
dīves, *gen. dīvitis* *rich*
dīxī *see* dīcō
- * dō, dare, dedī *give*
doceō, docēre, docuī *teach*
- * doctus, docta, doctum *educated, learned,*
skillful
dolor, dolōris, *m.* *pain*
- * domina, dominae, *f.* *lady (of the house),*
mistress
- * dominus, dominī, *m.* *master (of the*
house)
- * domus, domūs, *f.* *home*
domī *at home*
domum redīre *return home*
- * dōnum, dōnī, *n.* *present, gift*
dormiēns, *gen. dormientis* *sleeping*

*ferō, ferre, tulī *bring, carry*
 graviter ferre *take badly*
 *ferōciter *fiercely*
 *ferōx, gen. ferōcis *fierce, ferocious*
 ferrum, ferrī, n. *iron*
 fervēns, gen. ferventis *boiling*
 *fessus, fessa, fessum *tired*
 *festinō, festināre, festināvī *hurry*
 fēstus, fēsta, fēstum *festival, holiday*
 *fidēlis *faithful, loyal*
 fidēliter *faithfully, loyally*
 *fīlia, filiae, f. *daughter*
 *fīlius, filii, m. *son*
 fīō *I become*
 firmē *firmly*
 *flamma, flammae, f. *flame*
 floccī nōn faciō *I don't give a hoot about*
 *flōs, flōris, m. *flower*
 flūmen, flūminis, n. *river*
 *fluō, fluere, flūxī *flow*
 foedus, foeda, foedum *foul, horrible*
 fōns, fontis, m. *fountain*
 forceps, forcipis, m. *doctors' tongs, forceps*
 *fortasse *perhaps*
 *forte *by chance*
 *fortis *brave, strong*
 *fortiter *bravely*
 fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *courage*
 *fortūna, fortūnae, f. *fortune, luck*
 fortūnātus, fortūnāta, fortūnātum
 lucky
 *forum, forī, n. *forum, business center*
 *fossa, fossae, f. *ditch*
 *frāctus, frācta, frāctum *broken*
 frangēns, gen. frangentis *breaking*
 *frangō, frangere, frēgī *break*
 *frāter, frātris, m. *brother*
 frequentō, frequentāre, frequentāvī
 crowd, fill
 *frūmentum, frūmentī, n. *grain*
 *frūstrā *in vain*
 *fugiō, fugere, fūgī *run away, flee (from)*
 fui *see sum*
 fulgēns, gen. fulgentis *shining, glittering*
 *fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī *shine, glitter*
 fundō, fundere, fūdī *pour*
 *fundus, fundī, m. *farm*
 funebris, funereal, of the funeral
 fūnus, fūneris, n. *funeral*
 *fūr, fūris, m. *thief*
 furēns, gen. furentis *furious, in a rage*
 fūstis, fūstis, m. *club, stick*

g

garriēns, gen. garrientis *chattering, gossiping*
 garriō, garrīre, garrivī *chatter, gossip*
 garum, garī, n. *sauce*
 *geminī, geminōrum, m.pl. *twins*
 gemitus, gemitūs, m. *groan*
 *gemma, gemmae, f. *jewel, gem*
 *gēns, gentis, f. *family, tribe*
 Germānicus, Germānica,
 Germānicum *German*
 gerō, gerere, gessī *wear*
 gladiātor, gladiātōris, m. *gladiator*
 *gladius, gladii, m. *sword*
 Graecia, Graeciae, f. *Greece*
 Graecus, Graeca, Graecum *Greek*
 grātia, grātiarum, f.pl. *thanks*
 *grātiās agere *thank, give thanks*
 gravis *heavy*
 *graviter *seriously*
 graviter ferre *take badly*
 gubernātor, gubernātōris, m.
 helmsman
 *gustō, gustāre, gustāvī *taste*

h

*habeō, habēre, habuī *have*
 *habitō, habitāre, habitāvī *live*
 hāc *this*
 hae *these*
 haec *this*
 haedus, haedī, m. *young goat, kid*
 *haereō, haerēre, haesī *stick, cling*
 hanc *this*
 harundō, harundinis, f. *reed*
 hās *these*
 *hasta, hastae, f. *spear*
 *hauriō, haurīre, hausī *draw, drink up*
 *hercle! *by Hercules!*
 hērēs, hērēdis, m.f. *heir*
 *heri *yesterday*
 heus! *hey!*
 hī *these*
 *hic *this*
 hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī *spend the winter*
 *hiems, hiemis, f. *winter*
 hippopotamus, hippopotamī, m.
 hippopotamus
 hoc *this*
 hōc *this*

* hodiē *today*
 * homō, hominis, m. *person, man*
 homunculus, homunculī, m. *little man*
pip-squeak
 * honorō, honorāre, honorāvī *honor*
 hōra, hōrae, f. *hour*
 * horreum, horreī, n. *granary, barn*
 * hortus, hortī, m. *garden*
 hōs *these*
 * hospes, hospitis, m. *guest, host*
 * hūc *here, to this place*
 humilis *low-born, of low class*
 hunc *this*

I

* iacēō, iacēre, iacuī *lie, rest*
 iaciō, iacere, iēcī *throw*
 iactō, iactare, iactāvī *throw*
 * iam *now, already*
 * iānuā, iānuae, f. *door*
 ibam *see eō*
 * ibi *there*
 id *it*
 iēcī *see iaciō*
 * igitur *therefore, and so*
 * ignāvus, ignāva, ignāvum *cowardly*
lazy
 ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī *not know*
about
 iī *see eō*
 illa *that, she*
 illā *that*
 illam *that*
 illās *those*
 * ille *that, he*
 illī *they, those, that*
 illinc *from there*
 illis *those*
 illōs *those*
 * illūc *there, to that place*
 illum *that*
 immemor, *gen.* immemoris *forgetful*
 immortalis *immortal*
 immōtus, immōta, immōtum *still*
motionless
 impavidus, impavida, impavidum
fearless
 * impedio, impedire, impedivi *hinder*
hinder
 impello, impellere, impulī *push, push*
force

* imperātor, imperātoris, m. *emperor*
 * imperium, imperī, n. *empire*
 * impetus, imperūs, m. *attack*
 impetum facere *challenge, make a move*
 impiger, impigra, impigram *stagnant*
water
 implēō, implēre, implōvī *fill*
 importō, importāre, importāvī
import
 * in *against, towards*
 incēdō, incēdere, incessī *attack, attack*
 incendēs, *gen.* incendētis *burning*
burning place
 incendō, incendere, incendi *burn, set*
fire to
 * incidō, incidere, incidi *cut*
 incipit, incipere, incipī *begin*
 * inctō, inctare, inctāvī *argue*
convince
 incolumis *safe*
 incurrō, incurere, incurri *surprise*
challenge
 inēlegāns, *gen.* inēlegāntis *unrefined*
 * infāns, infantis, m. *baby, child*
 infēlix, *gen.* infēlicis *unlucky*
 infēnsus, infēnsa, infēnsum *hostile*
opposed
 * inferō, inferre, intulī *bring, bring in*
 iniuriā inferre *bring injury to*
bring injury to
 mortem inferre *bring death upon*
 Ann inferre *set back, annoy*
 infestus, infesta, infestum *hostile, dangerous*
 infirmus, infirma, infirmum *weak*
 inflō, inflare, inflavi *inflate*
 ingēnium, ingēniū, n. *ingenious*
 * ingēns, *gen.* ingētis *big*
 ingravescō, ingravescere *grow older*
 inicio, micere, incoī *throw in*
 * inimicus, inimici, m. *enemy*
 iniuria, iniuriac f. *injury, harm*
 iniuste *unjustly*
 innocēs, *gen.* innocentis *innocent*
 * inquit *says, says*
 insāns, insāna, insānum *crazy, crazy*
 insidiac, insidiarum, f.pl. *trap, ambush*
 insidic, insidire, insidiū *trap, trap, trap*
into
 insolēns, *gen.* insolētis *bold, insolent*
 * inspicio, inspicere, inspexi *look at*
inspect, examine

instrūctus, instrūcta, instrūctum
drawn up
 instruō, instruere, instrūxī *draw up*
 sē instruere *draw oneself up*
 *insula, insulae, f. *island*
 *intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī
understand
 *intentē *intently*
 intentus, intenta, intentum *intent*
 *inter *among, between*
 inter sē *among themselves, with each other*
 intereā *meanwhile*
 *interficiō, interficere, interfēcī *kill*
 interpellō, interpellāre, interpellāvī
interrupt
 interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī
question
 *intrō, intrāre, intrāvī *enter*
 intulī *see inferō*
 inūtilis *useless*
 invādō, invādere, invāsī *invade*
 *inveniō, invenīre, invenī *find*
 invicem *in turn*
 *invītō, invītāre, invītāvī *invite*
 *invītus, invīta, invītum *unwilling,*
reluctant
 iocus, iocī, m. *joke*
 ipsa *herself*
 *ipse *himself*
 *irātus, irāta, irātum *angry*
 ire *see eō*
 *irrupō, irrupere, irrūpī *burst in*
 Īsiacī, Īsiacōrum, m.pl. *followers of Isis*
 ista *that*
 istam *that*
 *iste *that*
 istī *that*
 istum *that*
 *ita *in this way*
 *ita vērō *yes*
 Ītalia, Ītaliae, f. *Italy*
 Ītalicus, Ītalica, Ītalicum *Italian*
 *itaque *and so*
 *iter, itineris, n. *journey, trip, progress*
 *iterum *again*
 iubeō, iubēre, iussī *order*
 Iūdāeī, Iūdaeorum, m.pl. *Jews*
 *iūdex, iūdicis, m. *judge*
 *iuvenis, iuvenis, m. *young man*

I
 *labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī *work*
 lacrima, lacrimae, f. *tear*
 lacrimīs sē trādere *burst into tears*
 lacrimāns, gen. lacrimantis *crying,*
weeping
 *lacrimō, lacrimāre, lacrimāvī *cry, weep*
 laedō, laedere, laesī *harm*
 *laetus, laeta, laetum *happy*
 languidus, languida, languidum
weak, feeble
 lapis, lapidis, m. *stone*
 lateō, latēre, latuī *lie hidden*
 lātrō, lātrāre, lātrāvī *bark*
 *latrō, latrōnis, m. *robber*
 *lātus, lāta, lātum *wide*
 *laudō, laudāre, laudāvī *praise*
 *lavō, lavāre, lāvī *wash*
 *lectus, lectī, m. *couch, bed*
 legiō, legiōnis, f. *legion*
 lēgō, lēgāre, lēgāvī *bequeath*
 *legō, legere, lēgī *read*
 lēniō, lēnīre, lēnīvī *soothe, calm down*
 lēniter *gently*
 *lentē *slowly*
 *leō, leōnis, m. *lion*
 levis *changeable, inconsistent*
 libellus, libellī, m. *little book*
 *libenter *gladly*
 *liber, librī, m. *book*
 *liberālis *generous*
 liberī, liberōrum, m.pl. *children*
 *liberō, liberāre, liberāvī *free, set free*
 libertās, libertātis, f. *freedom*
 *libertus, libertī, m. *freedman, ex-slave*
 libō, libāre, libāvī *pour an offering*
 līmōsus, līmōsa, līmōsum *muddy*
 liquō, liquāre, liquāvī *melt*
 *lītus, lītoris, n. *seashore, shore*
 *locus, locī, m. *place*
 Londinium, Londiniī, n. *London*
 longē *far, a long way*
 *longus, longa, longum *long*
 loquāx, gen. loquācis *talkative*
 lucrum, lucrī, n. *profit*
 lūdus, lūdī, m. *game*
 lūdī fūnebrēs *funeral games*
 *lūna, lūnae, f. *moon*

nīdus, nīdī, m. *nest*
 niger, nigra, nigrum *black*
 * nihil *nothing*
 nihil cūrō *I don't care*
 Nilus, Nīlī, m. *the river Nile*
 nitidus, nitida, nitidum *gleaming, brilliant*
 niveus, nivea, niveum *snow-white*
 * nōbilis *noble, of noble birth*
 nōbīs *see nōs*
 nocēns, *gen. nocentis* *guilty*
 noceō, nocēre, nocuī *hurt*
 noctū *by night*
 * nōlō, nōlle, nōluī *not want*
 nōlī *do not, don't*
 nōmen, nōminis, n. *name*
 * nōn *not*
 * nōnne? *surely?*
 nōnnūllī, nōnnūllae *some, several*
 * nōs *we, us*
 nōbīscum *with us*
 * noster, nostra, nostrum *our*
 * nōtus, nōta, nōtum *well-known, famous*
 * novem *nine*
 * nōvī *I know*
 * novus, nova, novum *new*
 * nox, noctis, f. *night*
 * nūbēs, nūbis, f. *cloud*
 * nūllus, nūlla, nūllum *not any, no*
 * num? *surely . . . not?*
 * numerō, numerāre, numerāvī *count*
 numerus, numerī, m. *number*
 * numquam *never*
 * nunc *now*
 * nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī *announce*
 * nūntius, nūntiū, m. *messenger, message*
 nūper *recently*
 nūptiae, nūptiārum, f.pl. *wedding*

O

obdormiō, obdormīre, obdormīvī
 fall asleep
 obeō, obīre, obiī *meet*
 obruō, obruere, obruī *overwhelm*
 obstināus, obstināta, obstinātum
 stubborn
 * obstō, obstāre, obstitī *obstruct, block the way*
 obtulī *see offerō*
 occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f. *opportunity*
 occupātus, occupāta, occupātum *busy*

* octō *eight*
 * oculus, oculī, m. *eye*
 offendō, offendere, offendī *displease*
 * offerō, offerre, obtulī *offer*
 officīna, officīnae, f. *workshop*
 * ōlim *once, some time ago*
 ōlla, ōllae, f. *vase*
 omittō, omittere, omīsī *drop*
 * omnis *all*
 operae, operārum, pl. *hired thugs*
 opportūnē *just at the right time*
 oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī *attack*
 * optimē *very well*
 * optimus, optima, optimum *very good, excellent, best*
 * ōrdō, ōrdinis, m. *row, line*
 ōrnāmentum, ōrnāmentī, n. *ornament*
 ōrnātrīx, ōrnātrīcis, f. *hairdresser*
 ōrnātus, ōrnāta, ōrnātum *decorated, elaborately furnished*
 ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī *decorate*
 ōsculum, ōsculī, n. *kiss*
 * ostendō, ostendere, ostendī *show*
 ostrea, ostreae, f. *oyster*
 ōtiōsus, ōtiōsa, ōtiōsum *at leisure, with time off, idle, on vacation*
 ōvum, ōvī, n. *egg*

P

* paene *nearly, almost*
 palaestra, palaestrae, f. *palaestra, exercise ground*
 palūs, palūdis, f. *marsh, swamp*
 * parātus, parāta, parātum *ready, prepared*
 * parēns, parentis, m. f. *parent*
 pāreō, pārēre, pāruī *obey*
 * parō, parāre, parāvī *prepare*
 * pars, partis, f. *part*
 in primā parte *in the forefront*
 * parvus, parva, parvum *small*
 * pater, patris, m. *father*
 patera, paterae, f. *bowl*
 * paucae, paucārum, f.pl. *few, a few*
 * pauci, paucōrum, m. pl. *few, a few*
 paulātīm *gradually*
 * paulisper *for a short time*
 paulum, paulī, n. *little, a little*
 pavīmentum, pavīmentī, n. *floor*
 * pāx, pācis, f. *peace*
 * pecūnia, pecūniae, f. *money*
 pendeō, pendēre, pendendī *hang*

- * per *through, along*
percutiō, percutere, percussī *strike*
* perēō, perīre, perīi *die, perish*
* periculōsus, periculōsa, periculōsum *dangerous*
* periculum, periculī, n. *danger*
peritē *skillfully*
perītia, perītiaē, f. *skill*
perītus, perīta, perītum *skillful*
* persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī *persuade*
perterritus, perterrita, perterritum *terrified*
* perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī *reach, arrive at*
* pēs, pedis, m. *foot, paw*
* pessimus, pessima, pessimum *very bad, worst*
* pestis, pestis, f. *pest, rascal*
* petō, petere, petivī *head for, attack; seek, beg for, ask for*
pharus, pharī, m. *lighthouse*
philosophus, philosophī, m. *philosopher*
pīca, pīcae, f. *magpie*
pictor, pictoris, m. *painter, artist*
pictūra, pictūrae, f. *painting, picture*
pīla, pīlae, f. *ball*
pingō, pingere, pīnxī *paint*
pius, pia, pium *respectful to the gods*
* placeō, placēre, placuī *please, suit*
placidus, placida, placidum *calm, peaceful*
plānē *clearly*
* plaudō, plaudere, plausī *applaud, clap*
* plastrum, plastrī, n. *wagon, cart*
plēnus, plēna, plēnum *full*
pluit, pluere, pluīt *rain*
* plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum *very much, most*
* plūrimī, plūrimae *very many*
plūs, gen. plūris *more*
* pōculum, pōculī, n. *cup (often for wine)*
poena, poenae, f. *punishment*
poenās dare *pay the penalty, be punished*
* poēta, poētae, m. *poet*
* pompa, pompae, f. *procession*
Pompēianus, Pompēiana, Pompēianum *Pompeian*
* pōnō, pōnere, posuī *put, place, put up*
pontifex, pontificis, m. *high priest*
* porta, portae, f. *gate*
portāns, gen. portantis *carrying*
* portō, portāre, portāvī *carry*
* portus, portūs, m. *harbor*
* poscō, poscere, poposci *demand, ask for*
possideō, possidēre, possēdī *possess*
* possum, posse, potuī *can, be able*
* post *after, behind*
* postea *afterwards*
* postquam *after, when*
* postrēmō *finally, lastly*
* postridiē *(on) the next day*
* postulō, postulāre, postulāvī *demand*
posuī *see pōnō*
potuī *see possum*
praeceps, gen. praecipitis *headlong*
praecursor, praecursōris, m. *forerunner*
praedium, praediī, n. *estate*
praemium, praemiī, n. *profit, prize, reward*
praeruptus, praerupta, praeruptum *steep*
* praesidium, praesidiī, n. *protection*
* praesum, praesesse, praeluī *be in charge of*
praeterēō, praeterīre, praeterīi *go past*
prāvus, prāva, prāvum *evil*
* precēs, precum, f. pl. *prayers*
premō, premere, pressī *push*
* pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum *expensive, precious*
pretium, pretiī, n. *price*
prīmō *first*
* prīmus, prīma, prīmum *first*
in prīmā parte *in the forefront*
* princeps, principis, m. *chief, chieftain*
* prior *first, in front*
* prō *in front of*
prō dī immortālēs! *heavens above!*
probus, proba, probum *honest*
* prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī *advance, proceed*
procul *far off*
* prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubui *fall down*
* prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisī *promise*
* prope *near*
prōsiliō, prosilire, prōsilui *leap forward*
prōvidēre, providere, prōvidi *foresee*
proximus, proxima, proximum *nearest*
psittacus, psittaci, m. *parrot*
* puella, puellae, f. *girl*
* puer, pueri, m. *boy*
pugil, pugilis, m. *boxer*
pugio, pugionis, m. *dagger*
* pugna, pugnae, f. *fight*
pugnāns, gen. pugnantis *fighting*

- * pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī *fight*
- * pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum *beautiful*
- * pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī *hit, knock on,*
whack, punch
- pūmiliō, pūmiliōnis, m.f. *dwarf*
- * pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī *punish*
- puppis, puppis, f. *stern*
- pūrus, pūra, pūrum *clean, spotless*
- puto, putāre, putāvī *think, consider*

q

- quā *from whom*
- * quadrāgintā *forty*
- quae *who, which*
- quaerēns, gen. quaerentis *searching for,*
looking for
- * quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī *search for,*
look for, inquire
- * quam (1) *how*
- * quam (2) *than*
- quam celerrimē *as quickly as possible*
- quam (3) *whom, which*
- * quamquam *although*
- quārtus, quārta, quārtum *fourth*
- quās *whom, which*
- * quattuor *four*
- * -que *and*
- quem *whom, which*
- * quī *who, which*
- quid? *what?*
- quid agis? *how are you?*
- quid vīs? *what do you want?*
- quīdam *one, a certain*
- quidquam *anything*
- quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī *rest*
- quiētus, quiēta, quiētum *quiet*
- quīndecim *fifteen*
- quīngentī, quīngentae *five hundred*
- * quīnquāgintā *fifty*
- * quīnque *five*
- * quis? *who?*
- * quō? *where? where to?*
- quō (2) *from whom*
- quō modō? *how?*
- * quod (1) *because*
- quod (2) *which*
- * quondam *one day, once*
- * quoque *also, too*
- quōs *whom, which*
- quot? *how many?*
- quotannis *every year*

r

- rādō, rādere, rāsī *scratch, scrape*
- * rapiō, rapere, rapuī *seize, grab*
- rārō *rarely*
- raucus, rauca, raucum *harsh*
- recidō, recidere, reccidī *fall back*
- * recipiō, recipere, recēpī *recover, take*
back
- sē recipere *recover*
- recitāns, gen. recitantis *reciting*
- recitō, recitāre, recitāvī *recite*
- rēctā *directly, straight*
- rēctus, rēcta, rēctum *straight*
- recumbēns, gen. recumbentis *lying*
down, reclining
- * recumbō, recumbere, recubuī *lie down,*
recline
- * recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī *refuse*
- * reddō, reddere, reddidī *give back*
- * redeō, redīre, rediī *return, go back,*
come back
- referō, referre, rettulī *carry, deliver*
- reficiō, reficere, refēcī *repair*
- rēgīna, rēgīnae, f. *queen*
- regiō, regiōnis, f. *region*
- * relinquō, relinquere, reliquī *leave*
- * remedium, remediī, n. *cure*
- rēmus, rēmī, m. *oar*
- renovō, renovāre, renovāvī *restore*
- reportō, reportāre, reportāvī *carry back*
- * rēs, rei, f. *thing, affair*
- rem cōficere *finish the job*
- rem intellegere *understand the truth*
- rem nārrāre *tell the story*
- rēs rūstica *the farming*
- * resistō, resistere, restitī *resist*
- * respondeō, respondēre, respondī *reply*
- respōnsum, respōnsī, n. *answer*
- * retinēō, retinēre, retinui *keep, hold back*
- retrahō, retrahere, retrāxī *drag back*
- * reveniō, revenīre, revēnī *come back,*
return
- * rēx, rēgis, m. *king*
- rhētor, rhētoris, m. *teacher*
- * rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī *laugh, smile*
- ripa, ripae, f. *river bank*
- rōbustus, rōbusta, rōbustum *strong*
- * rogō, rogāre, rogāvī *ask*
- rogus, rogī, m. *pyre*
- Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum *Roman*
- rosa, rosae, f. *rose*

rota, rotae, f. *wheel*
 rudēns, rudentis, m. *cable, rope*
 * ruō, ruere, ruī *rush*
 rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum *country, in*
the country
 rēs rūstica *the farming*

S

saccus, sacci, m. *bag, purse*
 * sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred*
 * sacerdos, sacerdotis, m. *priest*
 sacrificium, sacrificiū, n. *offering, sacrifice*
 sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī *sacrifice*
 * saepe *often*
 * saeviō, saevire, saevī *be in a rage*
 saevus, saeva, saevum *savage*
 saltātrix, saltātrīcis, f. *dancing-girl*
 * saltō, saltāre, saltāvī *dance*
 * salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī *greet*
 * salvē! *hello!*
 sānē *obviously*
 * sanguis, sanguinis, m. *blood*
 sānō, sānāre, sānāvī *heal, cure*
 sapiēns, gen. sapientis *wise*
 * satis *enough*
 * saxum, saxī, n. *rock*
 scapha, scaphae, f. *small boat*
 scelestus, scelesta, scelestum *wicked*
 scēptum, scēptri, n. *scepter*
 scindō, scindere, scidī *tear, tear up*
 scio, scire, scīvī *know*
 scōpae, scōpārum, f. pl. *broom*
 scopulus, scopulī, m. *reef*
 * scribō, scribere, scripsī *write*
 scriptor, scriptōris, m. *writer, sign-writer*
 scurrilis *obscene, dirty*
 * sē himself, herself, themselves
 sēcum *with him, with her, with them*
 secō, secāre, secuī *cut*
 * secundus, secunda, secundum *second*
 ventus secundus *favorable wind, following wind*
 sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum *without a care*
 * sed *but*
 sedēns, gen. sedentis *sitting*
 * sedeō, sedere, sedī *sit*
 seges, segetis, f. *crop, harvest*
 * sella, sellae, f. *chair*

sēmirus, sēmirus, sēmirus *half-collapsed*
 * semper *always*
 * senātor, senātōris, m. *senator*
 * senex, senis, m. *old man*
 * sententia, sententiae, f. *opinion*
 * sentiō, sentire, sēnsī *feel, notice*
 * septem *seven*
 sēricus, sērica, sēricum *silk*
 * sermō, sermōnis, m. *conversation*
 serviō, servire, servīvī *serve (as a slave)*
 * servō, servāre, servāvī *save, protect*
 * servus, servī, m. *slave*
 * sex *six*
 sī *if*
 sibi *to him (self), to her (self), to them (selves)*
 * sicut *like*
 signātor, signātōris, m. *witness*
 signō, signāre, signāvī *sign, seal*
 * signum, signū, n. *sign, seal, signal*
 silentium, silentiū, n. *silence*
 * silva, silvae, f. *woods, forest*
 * simulac, simulatque *as soon as*
 * sine *without*
 situs, sita, situm *situated*
 situs, situs, m. *position, site*
 sōl, sōlis, m. *sun*
 * soleō, solere *be accustomed*
 sollemniter *solemnly*
 sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis, f. *anxiety*
 * sollicitus, sollicita, sollicitum *worried, anxious*
 solum *only*
 * sōlus, sōla, solum *alone, lonely, only, on one's own*
 solūtus, solūta, solūtum *untied, cast off*
 solvō, solvere, solvī *untie, cast off*
 somnium, somniū, n. *dream*
 * sonitus, sonitus, m. *sound*
 sonō, sonāre, sonū *sound*
 sonus, sonī, m. *sound*
 * sordidus, sordida, sordidum *dirty*
 spargo, spangere, sparsi *scatter*
 sparsus, sparsa, sparsum *scattered*
 * spectaculum, spectaculi, n. *show, spectacle*
 spectator, spectātōris, m. *spectator*
 * spectō, spectāre, spectāvī *look at, watch*
 splendidus, splendida, splendidum *splendid*
 spongia, spongiae, f. *sponge*
 stans, gen. stantis *standing*

- * statim *at once*
statua, statuae, f. *statue*
stilus, stilī, m. *pen, stick*
- * stō, stāre, stetī *stand, lie at anchor*
- * stola, stolae, f. *(long) dress*
studeō, studēre, studuī *study*
stultē *stupidly, foolishly*
- * stultus, stulta, stultum *stupid, foolish*
suāvis *sweet*
- * suāviter *sweetly*
sub *under*
- * subitō *suddenly*
sūdō, sūdāre, sūdāvī *sweat*
sufficiō, sufficere, sufficī *be enough*
- * sum, esse, fuī *be*
summergō, sommergere, summersī
sink, dip
summersus, summersa, summersum
sunk
- * summus, summa, summum *highest,*
greatest, top
superbus, superba, superbum *arrogant,*
proud
- * superō, superāre, superāvī *overcome,*
overpower, overtake
- * supersum, superesse, superfuī *survive*
supplicium, suppliciī, n. *death penalty*
surdus, surda, surdum *deaf*
- * surgō, surgere, surrēxī *get up, stand up,*
rise
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī *undertake,*
take on
sustulī *see tollō*
susurrāns, gen. susurrantis *whispering,*
mumbling
susurrō, susurrāre, susurrāvī *whisper,*
mumble
- * suus, sua, suum *his, her, their, his own*
Syrī, Syrōrum, m.pl. *Syrians*
Syrius, Syria, Syrium *Syrian*

t

- * taberna, tabernae, f. *store, shop, inn*
tabernārius, tabernāriū, m. *store-owner,*
storekeeper, shopkeeper
tablinum, tablinī, n. *study*
- * taceō, tacēre, tacuī *be silent, be quiet*
tacē! *shut up! be quiet!*
- * tacitē *quietly, silently*
tacitus, tacita, tacitum *quiet, silent,*
in silence

- * tam *so*
- * tamen *however*
- * tandem *at last*
tangō, tangere, tetigī *touch*
tantus, tanta, tantum *so great, such a*
great
tardus, tarda, tardum *late*
taurus, taurī, m. *bull*
tē *see tū*
tempestās, tempestātis, f. *storm*
- * templum, templī, n. *temple*
- * temptō, temptāre, temptāvī *try*
tenēns, gen. tenentis *holding, owning*
- * teneō, tenēre, tenuī *hold, own*
tergeō, tergēre, tersī *wipe*
- * tergum, tergī, n. *back*
ā tergō *behind, in the rear*
- * terra, terrae, f. *ground, land*
- * terreō, terrēre, terruī *frighten*
terribilis *terrible*
- * tertius, tertia, tertium *third*
testāmentum, testāmentī, n. *will*
theātrum, theātrī, n. *theater*
tibi *see tū*
tībīcen, tībīcinis, m. *pipe player*
- * timeō, timēre, timuī *be afraid, fear*
timidus, timida, timidum *fearful,*
frightened
toga, togae, f. *toga*
- * tollō, tollere, sustulī *raise, lift up, hold up*
- * tot *so many*
- * tōtus, tōta, tōtum *whole*
tractō, tractāre, tractāvī *handle*
- * trādō, trādere, trādidī *hand over*
lacrimīs sē trādere *burst into tears*
tragoedia, tragoediae, f. *tragedy*
- * trahō, trahere, trāxī *drag*
tranquillitās, tranquillitātis, f.
calmness, serenity
trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī *cross*
trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī *pierce*
- * trēs *three*
triclinium, tricliniū, n. *dining-room*
- * trīgintā *thirty*
tripodes, tripodum, m.pl. *tripods*
trīstis *sad*
trivium, triviū, n. *crossroads*
trūdō, trūdere, trūsī *push, shove*
- * tū, tuī *you (singular)*
tēcum *with you (singular)*
- * tuba, tubae, f. *trumpet*
tubicen, tubicinis, m. *trumpeter*

tulī *see* ferō
 *tum *then*
 tumultus, tumultūs, m. *riot*
 tunica, tunicae, f. *tunic*
 *turba, turbae, f. *crowd*
 turbulentus, turbulenta, turbulentum
rowdy, disorderly
 tūtus, tūta, tūtum *safe*
 tūtius est *it would be safer*
 *tuus, tua, tuum *your, yours*

U

*ubi *where, when*
 ultor, ultōris, m. *avenger*
 *umbra, umbrae, f. *ghost, shadow*
 *umerus, umerī, m. *shoulder*
 *unda, undae, f. *wave*
 unde *from where*
 unguentum, unguentū, n. *perfume*
 unguis, unguis, m. *claw*
 unguō, unguere, ūnxi *anoint, smear*
 *ūnus, ūna, ūnum *one*
 urbānus, urbāne, urbānum *fashionable,*
sophisticated
 *urbs, urbis, f. *city*
 urna, urnae, f. *bucket, jar, jug*
 ursa, ursae, f. *bear*
 ut *as*
 *ūtilis *useful*
 *uxor, uxōris, f. *wife*

V

*valdē *very much, very*
 *valē *good-by*
 valvae, valvārum, f. pl. *doors*
 varius, varia, varium *different*
 *vehementer *violently, loudly*
 vehō, vehere, vēxi *carry*
 *vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis, f. *hunt*
 *vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī *sell*
 venia, veniae, f. *mercy, forgiveness*
 *veniō, venīre, venī *come*
 ventus, ventī, m. *wind*
 vēr, vēris, n. *spring*
 *verberō, verberāre, verberāvī *strike,*
beat
 verrō, verrere *sweep*
 versus, versus, m. *verse, line of poetry*
 versus magicus *magic spell*
 *vertō, vertere, vertī *turn*
 sē vertere *turn around*

vērus, vēra, vērum *true, real*
 vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī *dress*
 *vexō, vexāre, vexāvī *annoy*
 *via, viae, f. *street*
 vibrō, vibrāre, vibrāvī *wave, brandish*
 vīcīnus, vīcīna, vīcīnum *neighboring,*
nearby
 victima, victimae, f. *victim*
 *victor, victōris, m. *victor, winner*
 vīcus, vīcī, m. *village*
 *videō, vidēre, vīdī *see*
 *vīgintī *twenty*
 vīlicus, vīlicī, m. *overseer, manager*
 vīlis *cheap*
 *villa, villae, f. *villa, (large) house*
 *vincō, vincere, vīcī *win, be victorious*
 vindex, vindicis, m. *champion,*
defender
 vīndicō, vīndicāre, vīndicāvī *avenge*
 *vīnum, vīnī, n. *wine*
 *vir, virī, m. *man*
 virga, virgae, f. *rod, stick*
 vīs, f. *force, violence*
 vīs *see* volō
 vīsītō, vīsītāre, vīsītāvī *visit*
 *vīta, vītāe, f. *life*
 vitō, vitāre, vītāvī *avoid*
 vitreārius, vitreāriū, m. *glassmaker*
 vitreus, vitrea, vitreum *glass, made of*
glass
 vitrum, vitrī, n. *glass*
 *vituperō, vituperāre, vituperāvī *find*
fault with, tell off, curse
 *vivō, vīvere, vīxi *live, be alive*
 *vix *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty*
 vōbīs *see* vōs
 *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī *call*
 *volō, velle, voluī *want*
 quid vīs? *what do you want?*
 *vōs *you (plural)*
 vōbīscum *with you (plural)*
 *vōx, vōcis, f. *voice*
 vulnerātus, vulnerāta, vulnerātum
wounded
 *vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī *wound,*
injure
 *vuluus, vulneris, n. *wound*
 vult *see* volō

Z

zōna, zōnae, f. *belt*

Guide to Characters and Places

(The numeral in parentheses identifies the Stage in which the person or place is first featured.)

Aegyptius (adj.) (16): Egyptian, or resident of Egypt.

Aegyptus (16): Egypt.

Aethiopes (19): Ethiopians, people whose native land Ethiopia was located southeast of Egypt.

Alātor (13): son of the sick miner executed by Salvius; attempted to murder Salvius in revenge.

Alexandriā (16): Alexandria, port-city in Egypt on the Mediterranean coast; founded in 331 B.C. by Alexander the Great.

Alexandrīnus (adj.) (18): Alexandrian, or resident of Alexandria.

Anna (20): hairdresser of Plotina.

Anti-Loquāx (13): young slave of Salvius, dancer, twin brother of Loquax.

Arabia (17): Arabia, a peninsula of southwestern Asia, lying between the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf.

Arabs (adj.) (17): Arabian, or resident of Arabia.

Ariēs (19): Aries (the “Ram”), sign of the zodiac.

Aristō (19): Greek poet and tragedian, friend of Barbillus.

Athēnae (16): Athens, major city in Greece.

Athēniēnsis (adj.) (20): Athenian, or resident of Athens.

Atlās (18): mythological giant, who supports the sky on his shoulders.

AUGUSTUS Caesar (17): Roman emperor (27 B.C. – A.D. 14), worshiped as a god after his death.

Tiberius Claudius BARBILLUS (17): rich merchant of Alexandria; business associate of Caecilius; friend of Quintus.

Belimicus (15): British chieftain, governor of the Cantiaci, rival of Dumnorix.

Bregāns (13): native (British) slave of Salvius, unskilled laborer.

Britannī (13): Britons.

Britannia (13): Britain, once a province of the Roman empire.

Britannicus (adj.) (13): British.

Campānia (14): area in Italy around Pompeii.

Cantiacī (13): British tribe, inhabitants of area now called Kent.

- Cervīx (13): native (British) slave, plowman on Salvius' farm.
- Chaldaei (19): Chaldeans, a near-eastern people who were famous as astrologers and magicians; once ruled Babylon.
- Claudius (15): Roman emperor (A.D. 41–54), who made Cogidubnus king of the Regnenses; had sent into Britain the Second Legion under the command of Vespasian (A.D. 43).
- Quīntus Caecilius CLĒMĒNS (17): freedman of Quintus; now owner of a glass-store in Alexandria.
- Tiberius Claudius COGIDUBNUS (13): elderly ruler of the Regnenses; had been appointed “client king” under the Emperor Claudius; friend to Salvius.
- Diogenēs (17): Greek craftsman of Alexandria; gave shelter, during a riot, to Quintus and his Egyptian slave-boy guide.
- Domitilla (14): Rufilla's slave-girl, probably brought from Rome.
- Dumnorix (15): a chieftain of the Regnenses, rival of Belimicus.
- Durotrigēs (16): British tribe, inhabitants of area now called Dorset, west of the Regnenses' territory.
- Eupor (20): Greek friend of Rufus; medical student at Alexandria, later doctor in Athens.
- Eutyclus (18): owner of glass-blowers' workshop in Alexandria; operated protection racket for glassmakers and glass-store owners.
- Galatēa (19): complaining wife of Aristo.
- Graecia (16): Greece.
- Graecus (adj.) (16): Greek, or resident of Greece.
- Helena (19): beautiful daughter of Aristo and Galatea.
- Īsis (18): Egyptian goddess of fertility; wife of the god Osiris or Serapis.
- Ītalia (13): Italy.
- Ītalicus (adj.) (13): Italian.
- Iūdaeus (adj.) (17): Jewish, or Jew.
- Londinium (14): London, city in Britain.
- Loquāx (13): young slave of Salvius, singer, twin brother of Anti-Loquax.
- Marcia (14): elderly slave-woman in Salvius' house.
- Marcus (20): slave of Barbillus.
- Narcissus (20): poet; half-Egyptian suitor of Helena.
- Neāpolis (16): Naples, city in Italy near Pompeii.
- Nīlus (19): Nile, river of Egypt.
- Petrō (20): Barbillus' Greek doctor.
- Philadelphus (20): slave of Barbillus.
- Philus (13): skilled (Greek) slave of Salvius, bookkeeper.

Phormiō (19): overseer of Barbillus' household.

Plancus (17): an educated bore in Alexandria.

Plōtīna (20): deceased wife of Barbillus.

Pompēius Optātus (13): kindly overseer of iron mine in area now called Kent.

QUĪNTUS Caecilius Iūcundus (14): Rufilla's relative, who lost his parents and home in Pompeii (see Unit 1, Stage 12) during the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius; narrator of Stages 17–20; son of Caecilius.

Rēgnēnsēs (15): British tribe (named Atrebates before the Roman conquest), inhabitants of area now called Sussex and Hampshire.

Rōmānus (adj.) (17): Roman, or resident of Roman empire.

Rūfilla (13): noble-born wife of Salvius.

Tiberius Claudius RŪFUS (20): son of Barbillus and Plotina; escaped, during a voyage, from the storm that drowned his mother.

Gāius SALVIUS Līberālis (13): self-made wealthy man, Italian senator, appointed by the emperor to be circuit judge in southern Britain.

Scorpiō (20): Scorpio (the "Scorpion"), sign of the zodiac.

Semprōnia (14): Rufilla's friend in London whose husband was very wealthy and, unlike Salvius, indulgent.

Serāpis (17): god of fertility and of the underworld; sometimes worshiped with Isis.

Syrī (17): Syrians, residents of Syria.

Syrius (adj.) (20): Syrian.

Vārica (13): manager of Salvius' farm.

Vespasiānus, or Vespasian (16): Roman emperor (A.D. 69–79), whom Cogidubnus may have helped when Vespasian was only commander of the Second Legion against the Durotriges.

Volūbilis (13): skilled (Egyptian) slave of Salvius; cook.

Index of Cultural Topics

The page references are all to the background sections at the ends of the Stages. You will also find cultural information in the Latin stories.

- Agricola, governor of Britain 39
Alexander the Great 90
Alexandria 90–95, 117, 154–58
 exports and imports 90–92
 harbors of 92–94
 important sites of 92, 94–95
 Caesareum 94, 95
 Canopus Street 94
 Museum and Library 95, 154–58
 Pharos 92, 117
 Royal Quarter 94
 peoples of 95
 size, strategic location of 90
Aristarchus of Samos, astronomer 95
Arval Brotherhood 15

Brigantia, kingdom of northern Britain 37

Caesar, invasion of Britain by 36, 39
Claudius 36–37, 57
 invasion of Britain 36–37, 57
 “Cleopatra’s Needles,” or obelisks 95
Copernicus, Polish astronomer 155
Ctesibius, inventor of pump 158–59

Egypt 115–117
 government 115, 117
 Nile river 115
 peasant farmers 115, 117
 pharaohs 115
Eratosthenes, astronomer 157
Euclid, geometer 155–157

Fishbourne 58, 72–74
 archaeological site 58
 craftsmen 73
 garden 73–74
 granary 58
 harbor 58, 72
 marble 73
 palace 58, 72–74
 village, modern 58

Glass manufacture 112–14
Golden Ass of Apuleius 137
 Lucius, narrator-hero of 137

Hero, inventor of steam turbine 156–57
Herophilus, anatomist 154
Hippocrates of Cos, physician 154–55
 Hippocratic oath 154

Isis 134–37
 brotherhood of 137
 Horus, son of 134
 initiation into mysteries of 135–37
 nāvigium festival of 134–35
 Osiris, death and discovery by Isis 134
 temple at Pompeii 137

Medicine, ancient 154–55

Plautius, governor of Britain 37, 40
Ptolemy (Ptolemies), Greek kings of
 Egypt 90

Red Sea Guide Book 92
Regnenses, client-people in Britain 38,
 56–58
 Cogidubnus, client-king of 56–58
 Noviomagus (Chichester), capital 58
 temple to Minerva and Neptune 56–58
 temple dedicatory stone 56
Roman Britain 16–18, 36–41
 exports and imports 38, 40–41
 farming 16–18
 native rulers 37
 roads 38, 40
 slaves 18
 villas 16–18

Salvius, *iuridicus* in Britain 15

Vespasian 39, 58
 commander of Second Legion in Britain
 39, 58
 emperor 58

Index of Grammatical Topics

Key: AL = About the Language RvG = Review Grammar RfG = Reference Grammar

Page references are given first, with paragraph references (i.e. references to numbered sections in the language notes and the Review Grammar) following in boldface; Roman numerals following page numbers denote sections in the Reference Grammar, which are sometimes followed by paragraph references.

In general, AL references are only to the *first* language note in this Unit on the grammatical topic in question: in a few cases, additional pages are cited.

adjectives

AL 26–27.1–7; 29.1–3

RvG 167–71

RfG 191.II

agreement

of nouns and adjectives

AL 26–27.1–6;

29.1–3; 106.1–4

RvG 167.1

RfG 194.VI

of relative pronoun with antecedents

AL 107.5

RfG 194.VII.2

case

see vocative case,
genitive case,
dative case;
agreement

comparison of adjectives

RvG 169–71

dative case, with special verbs

AL 111.1–3

declension of adjectives

AL 29.2

RvG 167–68.2–3

demonstrative pronouns (**hic**, **ille**, etc.)

AL 127.1–2

RvG 174.5; 176.8–9

RfG 192.III.4

determinative pronoun

(**is**, **ea**, **eum**, **eam**, etc.)

AL 150.1–2

RvG 177.10

RfG 192.III.5

enim

AL 90.2–3

eō (**īre**)

RvG 182.1

feminine

see gender

ferō

RvG 182.1

gender

AL 106–107.2–6

RvG 162–63 (notes

3–4); 167.1; 170.4

RfG 194.VI.2

genitive case

AL 86.1–3

RvG 166.6

RfG 195.IX

igitur

AL 89.1

imperative of the verb

AL 130–31.1–5

RvG 179.1

infinitive of the verb

AL 10–11.1–5; 72.1–3

RvG 178.1; 182.1

RfG 193.V

longer sentences

with subordinating

conjunctions

(**postquam**, **simulac**,
etc.)

RvG 186–88

with verb understood

RvG 189

masculine

see gender

neuter

see gender

nōlō

RvG 183.2

nōnne ?

AL 55–56.2–3

nouns

RvG 162–66

RfG 190.I

see also agreement

num?

AL 55–56.1, 3

number

see agreement

obstō (with dative)

AL 111.2–3

participles (present active)

AL 145–46.1–6

RfG 193.IV; 195.VIII

pluperfect tense

AL 69–70.1–4

RvG 179.1

possum

AL 10–11.3–5; 35.1–4

RvG 182.1; 183.3

postquam

see longer sentences, with

subordinating

conjunctions

principal parts of verbs

RfG 196.X

pronouns

RvG 172–77

see also

demonstrative pronouns,

determinative pronoun,

relative pronoun

- quamquam**
see longer sentences, with
 subordinating
 conjunctions
- que**
 AL 13.1–2
- quod** (*because*)
see longer sentences, with
 subordinating
 conjunctions
- relative clauses
 AL 54.1–3
 RvG 175.7
 RfG 194–95.VII
- relative pronoun (**quī**,
quae, **quod**, etc.)
 AL 107.5
 RvG 175.7
- RfG 192.III.3:
 194–95.VII.2
- resistō** (with dative)
 AL 111.2–3
- simulac**
see longer sentences, with
 subordinating
 conjunctions
- sum** (**esse**)
 RvG 182.1; 183.3; 184.7
- tamen**
 AL 89.1
- ubi** (*when*)
see longer sentences, with
 subordinating
 conjunctions
- verbs
 RvG 178–84
- regular 178–81
 irregular 182–84
 personal endings 181.8
 types of conjugation
 RfG 196.X
- vocative case
 AL 133–34.1–4
 RvG 162 (notes 1–2)
- volō**
 AL 10–11.3–5
 RvG 182–83.1–2
- word order
 AL 89–90.1–4
 RvG 184–85
 RfG 197.XI

Time Chart

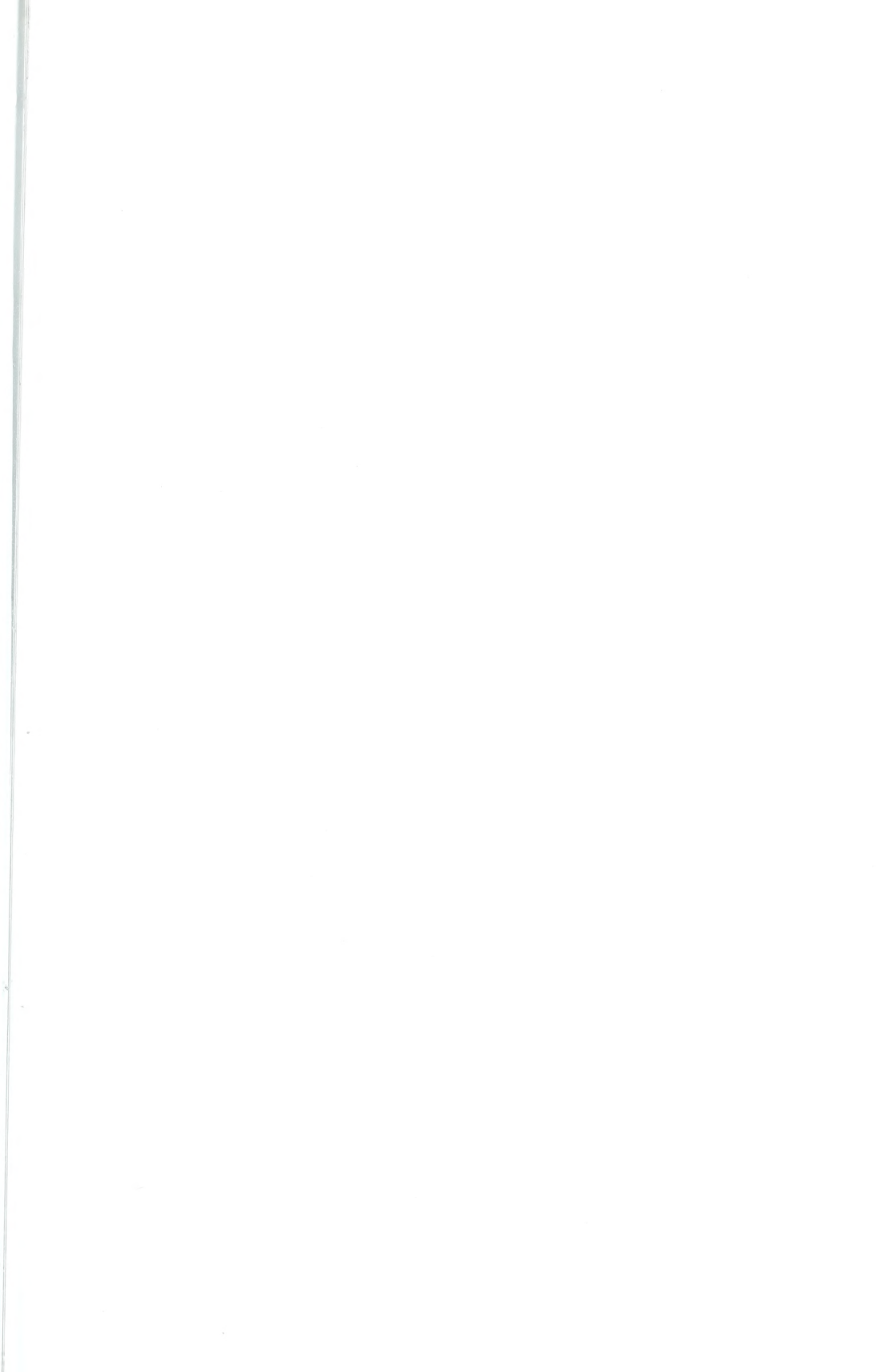
EGYPT & BRITAIN		ROME	THE WORLD
B.C.			B.C.
c. 3100–1166	Egypt ruled by Pharaohs		c. 3100–1166
c. 2100			c. 2100
c. 1500			c. 1500
c. 1450			c. 1450
c. 1200	Exodus of Jews from Egypt		c. 1200
753		Foundation of Rome (traditional date) & rule of kings	753
c. 563			c. 563
c. 551	Egypt under Persian rule		c. 551
525–401		Expulsion of kings & founding of Roman Republic	525–401
509			509
500–400			500–400
390		Rome briefly captured by Gauls	390
336	Alexander enters Egypt		336
332	Alexander founds Alexandria		332
331			331
323			323
311	Ptolemy I Soter, first Greek ruler of Egypt		311
300–200			300–200
c. 295	Ptolemy I founds Museum/Library	{ Rome gains control of Italy } Wars with Carthage	c. 295
c. 280	Ptolemy II builds Pharos lighthouse		c. 280
218		Hannibal crosses the Alps	218
200–100		Rome extends rule outside Italy	200–100
58–49		Caesar conquers Gaul	58–49
55–54	Caesar's expeditions to Britain		55–54
51	Cleopatra VII Queen of Egypt	Caesar is made "Dictator"	51
49		Caesar is murdered	49
44		Civil War between Octavian (Augustus) & Antony	44
44–31			44–31
30	{ Antony and Cleopatra commit suicide } Rome annexes Egypt		30
27		Augustus becomes Emperor	27

13	Two obelisks re-erected before Caesareum in Alexandria		
c. 4		Birth of Jesus	c. 4
A.D.			A.D.
14		Tiberius becomes Emperor	14
29		Caligula becomes Emperor	29
37		Claudius becomes Emperor	37
41		St. Peter brings Christianity to Rome	41
42			42
43			43
45–57		Missionary journeys of St. Paul	45–57
54			54
61			61
64			64
69			69
70		Romans sack Jerusalem and Temple	70
75			75
78–84			78–84
79			79
81		Titus becomes Emperor	81
83–84		August 24 : Vesuvius erupts	83–84
96		Domitian becomes Emperor	96
98		Nerva becomes Emperor	98
117		Trajan becomes Emperor	117
208–11		Hadrian becomes Emperor	208–11
296			296
313		Emperor Constantine officially supports Christianity in Roman Empire	313
330		Capital of Roman Empire moved to Constantinople	330

400–500	Anglo-Saxons settle in Britain	Visigoths sack Rome	400–500
410	Rome formally renounces Britain	Last Emperor of Rome deposed	410
476			476
570			570
c. 643	Arabs conquer Egypt		c. 643
800			800
800–1100		Period of turmoil in Italy	800–1100
1066	Normans conquer England		1066
1143		Rome becomes an independent city-state	1143
c. 1400		The Renaissance begins in Italy	c. 1400
1453		Turks capture Constantinople	1453
1492		Columbus arrives in America	1492
1497		Cabot explores Canada	1497
1517	Turks occupy Alexandria and Egypt becomes part of Ottoman Empire		1517
1521		Reformation begins	1521
1620		Pilgrims land at Plymouth, Mass.	1620
1776		United States declare their Independence	1776
1798	Napoleon captures Alexandria		1798
1806		End of Holy Roman Empire	1806
1815		Napoleon finally defeated at Waterloo	1815
1861			1861
1863		Lincoln emancipates American slaves	1863
1867		Canada becomes a Dominion	1867
1869	Suez Canal opened		1869
1879	Obelisk from before Caesareum given to New York City		1879
1914	Egypt becomes British Protectorate		1914
1914–1918		First World War	1914–1918
1922	Egypt becomes independent		1922
1931		Canada becomes a Commonwealth nation	1931
1939–1945		Second World War	1939–1945
1946		Italy becomes a Republic	1946

Quick Reference to Grammatical Information

- I Nouns (grammatical tables) 190
- II Adjectives (grammatical tables) 191
- III Pronouns (grammatical tables) 191–92
- IV Verbs (grammatical tables) 178–84
- V The Infinitive 178, 182
- VI Agreement of Nouns and Adjectives 167, 194
- VII Relative Clauses 175, 194–95
- VIII Participial Phrases 195
- IX The Genitive Case 166, 195
- X Principal Parts of a Verb 196
- XI Sentence Patterns 197



Time Chart

EGYPT & BRITAIN

B.C.	
c. 3100-1166	
c. 2100	
c. 1500	
c. 1450	
c. 1200	
753	
c. 563	
c. 551	
525-401	
509	
500-400	
390	
336	
332	
331	
323	
311	
300-200	
c. 295	
c. 280	
218	
200-100	
58-49	
55-54	
51	
49	
44	
44-31	
30	

Egypt ruled by Pharaohs

Exodus of Jews from Egypt

Egypt under Persian rule

Alexander enters Egypt
Alexander founds Alexandria

Ptolemy I Soter, first Greek ruler of Egypt

Ptolemy I founds Museum/Library
Ptolemy II builds Pharos lighthouse

Caesar's expeditions to Britain
Cleopatra VII Queen of Egypt

{ Antony and Cleopatra commit suicide }
Rome annexes Egypt

ROME

Foundation of Rome (traditional date) & rule of kings

Expulsion of kings & founding of Roman Republic

Rome briefly captured by Gauls

{ Rome gains control of Italy }
Wars with Carthage

Hannibal crosses the Alps
Rome extends rule outside Italy
Caesar conquers Gaul

Caesar is made "Dictator"
Caesar is murdered
Civil War between Octavian (Augustus) & Antony

THE WORLD

B.C.

c. 3100-1166

Indo-European migrations

Minoan civilization at its height

Development of Hinduism

c. 1500
c. 1450
c. 1200
753

Buddha born in India

Confucius born in China

c. 563
c. 551
525-401
509

{ Persia invades Greece }
Golden Age of Athens

Alexander becomes ruler of Greece

Alexander dies in Babylon

Building of Great Wall of China

390
336
332
331
323
311

300-200

c. 295
c. 280
218
200-100
58-49
55-54
51
49
44
44-31

30

27

400–500	Anglo-Saxon settle in Britain	Visigoths sack Rome	400–500
410	Rome formally renounces Britain	Last Emperor of Rome deposed	410
476			476
570			570
c. 643	Arabs conquer Egypt		c. 643
800			800
800–1100		Period of turmoil in Italy	800–1100
1066	Normans conquer England	Rome becomes an independent city-state	1066
1143		The Renaissance begins in Italy	1143
c. 1400			c. 1400
1453		Turks capture Constantinople	1453
1492		Columbus arrives in America	1492
1497		Cabot explores Canada	1497
1517	Turks occupy Alexandria and Egypt becomes part of Ottoman Empire		1517
1521		Reformation begins	1521
1620		Pilgrims land at Plymouth, Mass.	1620
1776		United States declare their Independence	1776
1798	Napoleon captures Alexandria	End of Holy Roman Empire	1798
1806		Napoleon finally defeated at Waterloo	1806
1815			1815
1861		Victor Emmanuel II becomes King of a united Italy	1861
1863		Lincoln emancipates American slaves	1863
1867	Suez Canal opened	Canada becomes a Dominion	1867
1869	Obelisk from before Caesareum given to New York City		1869
1879	Egypt becomes British Protectorate		1879
1914	Egypt becomes independent	First World War	1914
1914–1918			1914–1918
1922		Canada becomes a Commonwealth nation	1922
1931		Second World War	1931
1939–1945			1939–1945
1946			1946

Quick Reference to Grammatical Information

- I Nouns (grammatical tables) 190
- II Adjectives (grammatical tables) 191
- III Pronouns (grammatical tables) 191–92
- IV Verbs (grammatical tables) 178–84
- V The Infinitive 178, 182
- VI Agreement of Nouns and Adjectives 167, 194
- VII Relative Clauses 175, 194–95
- VIII Participial Phrases 195
- IX The Genitive Case 166, 195
- X Principal Parts of a Verb 196
- XI Sentence Patterns 197



The Cambridge Latin Course is a well-established introductory program in four Units, originally developed by the Cambridge School Classics Project. Under the sponsorship of the North American Cambridge Classics Project, Unit 2 has now been fully revised and adapted for use in the United States and Canada. This proven approach to Latin features:

- a stimulating method which integrates a continuous storyline with the development of grammar and a wealth of information on cultural topics
- a complete language information section included in the students' textbook
- many color photographs which give a fascinating illustration of the Roman world
- supplementary materials – a thorough Teacher's Manual, a workbook, and cassette tapes.



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 0-521-34381-X



9 780521 343817